

TIVO INC  
Form 10-K  
April 16, 2007  
[Table of Contents](#)

---

**UNITED STATES**  
**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, D. C. 20549

---

**FORM 10-K**

---

**x ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

**For the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007**

**.. TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

**FOR THE TRANSITION PERIOD FROM \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_**

Commission file number 000-27141

---

**TIVO INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

---

**Delaware**  
(State or other jurisdiction of

incorporation or organization)

**2160 Gold Street, PO Box 2160, Alviso, CA**  
(Address of principal executive offices)

**(408) 519-9100**

**77-0463167**  
(IRS Employer

Identification No.)

**95002**  
(Zip Code)

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

(Registrant's telephone number including area code)

### Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

NONE

### Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:

COMMON STOCK, \$.001 PAR VALUE PER SHARE

---

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant: (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K (§ 229.405 of this chapter) is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K. ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, or a non-accelerated filer. See definition of accelerated filer and large accelerated filer in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer ☐ Accelerated filer ☒ Non-accelerated filer ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Exchange Act Rule 12b-2). Yes ☐ No ☒

The aggregate market value of the registrant's common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share, held by non-affiliates of the registrant on July 31, 2006, the last business day of the registrant's most recently completed second fiscal quarter, was approximately \$491.4 million (based on the closing sales price of the registrant's common stock on that date as reported in the Nasdaq National Market System). Shares of the registrant's common stock held by each officer and director and each person known to the registrant to own 10% or more of the outstanding voting power of the registrant have been excluded in that such persons may be deemed to be affiliates. This determination of affiliate status is not a determination for other purposes.

On April 3, 2007, the Registrant had 97,351,344 outstanding shares of common stock.

### DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Part III incorporates by reference certain information from the registrant's definitive proxy statement (the Proxy Statement) for the 2007 Annual Meeting of Shareholders to be filed on or before May 31, 2007.

---

**Table of Contents**

**TiVo Inc.**

**Form 10-K**

**For the Fiscal Year Ended January 31, 2007**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

|                                                                                                                               |            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b><u>PART I</u></b>                                                                                                          | <b>3</b>   |
| Item 1. <u>BUSINESS</u>                                                                                                       | 3          |
| Item 1A. <u>RISK FACTORS</u>                                                                                                  | 17         |
| Item 1B. <u>UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS</u>                                                                                     | 35         |
| Item 2. <u>PROPERTIES</u>                                                                                                     | 35         |
| Item 3. <u>LEGAL PROCEEDINGS</u>                                                                                              | 35         |
| Item 4. <u>SUBMISSION OF MATTERS TO A VOTE OF SECURITY HOLDERS</u>                                                            | 38         |
| <b><u>PART II</u></b>                                                                                                         | <b>39</b>  |
| Item 5. <u>MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDERS MATTERS, AND ISSUERS PURCHASE OF EQUITY SECURITIES</u> | 39         |
| Item 6. <u>SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA</u>                                                                                        | 41         |
| Item 7. <u>MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATION</u>                           | 43         |
| Item 7A. <u>QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK</u>                                                    | 62         |
| Item 8. <u>FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA</u>                                                                    | 64         |
| Item 9. <u>CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE</u>                           | 101        |
| Item 9A. <u>CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES</u>                                                                                       | 102        |
| Item 9B. <u>OTHER INFORMATION</u>                                                                                             | 105        |
| <b><u>PART III</u></b>                                                                                                        | <b>105</b> |
| Item 10. <u>DIRECTORS AND EXECUTIVE OFFICERS OF THE REGISTRANT</u>                                                            | 105        |
| Item 11. <u>EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION</u>                                                                                        | 105        |
| Item 12. <u>SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS</u>                | 105        |
| Item 13. <u>CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS</u>                                                                | 105        |
| Item 14. <u>PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT FEES AND SERVICES</u>                                                                        | 105        |
| <b><u>PART IV</u></b>                                                                                                         | <b>106</b> |
| Item 15. <u>EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES</u>                                                                    | 106        |
| <u>SIGNATURES AND OFFICER CERTIFICATIONS</u>                                                                                  | 113        |

## **Table of Contents**

### **PART I**

#### **ITEM 1. BUSINESS**

##### **General Development of Business**

TiVo is a leading provider of technology and services for digital video recorders ( DVR ). The subscription-based TiVo service redefines home entertainment by providing consumers with an easy way to record, watch, and control television and receive videos, pictures, and movies from cable, broadcast, and broadband sources. TiVo offers such features as Season Pass recordings, WishList searches, TiVoToGo transfers, TiVoCast content (which includes premium content delivered from Amazon Unbox), TiVo KidZone, TiVo Online Scheduling, and TiVo Product Watch. As of January 31, 2007, there were approximately 4.4 million subscriptions to the TiVo service. We distribute the TiVo service through consumer electronics retailers and through our on-line store at TiVo.com. Additionally, we provide the TiVo service through agreements with leading television service providers such as satellite television providers, including currently DIRECTV, and in the future cable television operators, such as Comcast and Cox, and digital subscriber line, DSL, providers such as BellSouth and Earthlink. We also provide innovative marketing solutions for the television industry, including a unique platform for advertisers and audience research measurement.

We currently derive revenues from three sources:

Consumers. Our primary source of revenues is from consumers, who subscribe directly to the TiVo service and pay us monthly fees of up to \$19.95 per month. We also offer consumers the option to prepay for one to three years of TiVo service at prices ranging from \$179 to \$399. We reach consumers in part through distribution relationships with major retailers, through our on-line store at TiVo.com, and in the future, through marketing relationships with other third parties such as DSL providers like Earthlink and BellSouth.

Television service providers. We also work with DIRECTV, a satellite television provider, who pays us recurring monthly fees in order to offer the TiVo service to its existing TiVo subscribers. We receive fees for licensing and professional services from this and other customers. Additionally, we expect to receive recurring monthly fees from cable television providers, Comcast and Cox in the future.

Advertisers. We work directly with television advertisers and agencies to offer a variety of solutions for the television advertising market. These include short- and long-form video advertising, audience research measurement, lead generation, and commerce. Some of our key clients include Toyota Motors, General Motors, BMW, GE, CBS, Showtime, Warner Brothers, Sony, E-Trade, Sprint, Intel, Information Resources, Inc., also known as IRI, and Nielsen.

We continue to be subject to a number of risks, including delays in product and service developments; competitive service offerings; lack of market acceptance; and uncertainty of future profitability; dependence on third parties for manufacturing, marketing, and sales support; access to television programming; intellectual property claims against us; and our ability to sustain and grow our subscription base. We conduct our operations through one reportable segment. We anticipate that our business will continue to be seasonal and expect to generate a significant number of our annual new TiVo subscriptions during and immediately after the holiday shopping season. To date, we have incurred significant losses and have had substantial negative cash flow. During the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, our cash used to fund our operations was \$33.5 million and we had a net loss of \$47.8 million. As of January 31, 2007, we had an accumulated deficit of \$741.8 million.

##### **Industry Background**

Consumer Demand is Driving Widespread Adoption of DVR Technology. We believe DVRs offer a compelling value proposition to consumers by providing the means to effectively sort through, select from, and organize the growing volume of broadcast, cable, and broadband video

## **Table of Contents**

content including pictures, videos, and movies. DVR technology also gives consumers the ability to easily fast forward, pause, and rewind recorded video content which should result in increased demand for DVR technology. Today, approximately 16 million households have DVRs and this is expected to increase to 56 million by 2010 according to The Carmel Group.

**Television Distributors See DVR Technology as a Competitive Asset.** Nearly all of the major television distributors in the United States including Comcast, DIRECTV, EchoStar, Time-Warner Cable, and others, are offering DVR technology to their customers. These companies have indicated they consider DVR technology a competitive tool to help differentiate their services by offering their customers more programming features. These operators are looking for ways to more effectively attract and retain consumers to their own offerings.

**DVR is Changing the Television Advertising Industry.** The proliferation of DVRs, and their ability to easily fast forward through television content, is requiring television advertisers to evaluate new and different ways to reach out to consumers. The DVR in general and the TiVo service specifically have given viewers the freedom to view video content when they want to view the content. Time shifting has made it more difficult for advertisers to be guaranteed that their commercials will be viewed by audiences at the regularly scheduled time the program is aired by network or local television stations. DVRs allow viewers the freedom to fast forward through all or a portion of commercial advertising incorporated into television and other programs, which means that advertisers are not assured that their commercials will be viewed at all. TiVo offers other programming options, such as video delivered by broadband, which may result in further audience fragmentation.

**Broadband Video is Increasing Television Viewing Options.** The growth in broadband video is providing television consumers with significantly more video options. These increased viewing options are providing television consumers with more access to different forms of video content from providers other than traditional cable and satellite television program packages. We expect DVR technology to be integral in providing television consumers with the ability to access, organize, and view television from both broadband and traditional television sources.

## **Our Solution**

We have created a unique set of technologies, products, and services that meet the needs of consumers, television distributors, and the advertising community.

**Compelling, Easy-to-Use Consumer DVR Offering.** The TiVo service, combined with a TiVo-enabled DVR, has many features that we believe dramatically improve a consumer's television viewing experience. Depending on the model, TiVo-enabled DVRs can support analog cable, digital cable, satellite, or over-the-air broadcast television, including high definition television. The TiVo service enables consumers to watch TV on their own schedule by automatically finding and digitally recording their favorite shows, all season long, even if the schedule changes, and can even skip reruns. The TiVo service allows consumers to find new shows to watch through features that enable them to search for shows to record by subject, title, genre, actor, director, or channel. The TiVo service can also suggest shows consumers may like based on shows they are recording. Consumers can also pause and rewind live and recorded television. Unlike with a VCR, consumers can play back a show from its beginning while it is in the middle of being recorded, and consumers can play back a previously recorded show while recording another show.

**Differentiated Features.** The TiVo service also offers home entertainment innovations with features like digital music and photos, multi-room viewing, mobility, and unique control over what television programming is viewable in the home. Customers with the TiVo service and a Series2 DVR or Series3 HD DMR (High Definition, Digital Media Recorder) connected to their home network can play their digital music collection through their home entertainment system, download premium content via broadband, or view digital photos on their TV. Those with two or more TiVo Series2 DVRs and a home network can use the multi-room viewing feature to record a show in one room and play it back in another room. The TiVoToGo feature enables users to transfer programs recorded on certain model TiVo DVRs to their own personal computer. Consumers can either watch the programming on their personal computer or transfer it to various portable media devices. TiVo KidZone, gives parents improved ability to easily choose the best television

## **Table of Contents**

programming for their families. In addition, the Series3 HD DMR provides users with dual tuner, high definition, and CableCARD functionalities. We believe these advanced features help to differentiate the TiVo service from other competitive DVR offerings.

**Integrating Broadband and Broadcast Capabilities.** When attached to a broadband connection, a TiVo-enabled DVR with the TiVo services provides access to additional features. The TiVo service enables broadband applications such as Yahoo! Photos that allows users to access photos stored in Yahoo! Photos from their television or the ability to receive premium content through our relationship with Amazon Unbox. Other broadband applications include access to home movies, downloadable internet video, internet radio, pod casting, theatrical movie listings, or games. The TiVo service also enables the delivery of video content through an internet connection expanding the consumer's access to video content of interest to them.

**Portable Technology Platform.** We are designing our technology for use both in standalone DVRs and in devices that integrate DVR technology and other functionality, such as digital cable and satellite set-top boxes, and, in the past, DVD recorders. This allows us to offer consumer electronics manufacturers and television distributors a branded, highly respected DVR service that they can in turn offer to their customers.

**Advanced Advertising and Promotion Solutions.** We offer a variety of solutions to the advertising industry. Through our Showcases, interactive tags, and other advertising and promotion solutions, we distribute video content designed to entertain consumers while providing a promotional vehicle for our advertising and promotion customers. For example, movie studios pay us to deliver previews of upcoming films, consumer product companies pay us to deliver their product and services content, and television companies pay us to promote upcoming programs. Additionally, we offer advertisers, advertising agencies, and television networks second-by-second audience research measurement reporting.

## **Our Strategy**

Our goal is to change the way consumers watch television, broadband video, and advertising and to generate revenues through the deployment of our branded entertainment services and technology to television viewing households worldwide. The key elements of our strategy are:

**Offer an Increasingly Differentiated Service.** Our goal is to lead the market with innovations that expand the value and potential of our subscription service. We plan to continue to invest in innovation to improve consumer choice, convenience, and control over their home entertainment and to make TiVo more compelling for both current and potential customers. For example, in fiscal year 2007 we launched, a new service feature called TiVo KidZone, which is a personalized TV area where children are able to find quality live or recorded programming that their parents deem appropriate. We provide consumers with access to new interactive applications with the ability to receive more content delivered to their TiVo-enabled DVRs over a broadband connection such as premium film and television content from Amazon Unbox and professionally produced program content from providers such as New York Times, CNET, and the NBA. We believe that the combination of mobility, entertainment personalization, and broadcast/broadband integration will continue to enhance the TiVo service.

**Diversify our Sources of Revenue.** As our subscription base has grown, we have been able to offer interactive advertising capabilities to programmers and advertisers. We plan to continue developing and enhancing these offerings, which take advantage of the unique tagging, recording, storage, and viewing capabilities of the TiVo service. Some of our key clients include Toyota Motors, General Motors, BMW, GE, CBS TV, Showtime, Warner Brothers, Sony, E-Trade, Sprint, Intel, IRI, and Nielsen.

**Integrate Our Technology.** Part of our strategy focuses on creating, developing, and deploying a software version of the TiVo service that will be executable on certain third-party DVR platforms in order to promote the mass deployment of devices capable of running the TiVo service. The current focus of this effort is primarily on cable television providers, which are deploying DVR's in

## **Table of Contents**

increasing numbers. We have announced partnerships with Comcast and Cox to deploy a software version of the TiVo service to run on DVR hardware manufactured by a variety of set-top box manufacturers. We began engineering trials with Comcast during fiscal year 2007 and expect both Comcast and Cox to begin initial deployment of their TiVo-enabled DVR solution during our fiscal year 2008.

**Extend and Protect Our Intellectual Property.** The convenience, control, and ease of use of the TiVo service is derived largely from the technology we have developed. We intend to continue to design, develop, and implement innovative technological solutions that leverage and enhance the TiVo service offering. We have adopted a proactive patent and trademark strategy designed to protect and extend our technology and intellectual property.

**Promote and Leverage the TiVo Brand.** We believe the strength of the TiVo brand is an advantage in attracting consumers, cable and satellite television providers, and other customers. In the past, we have dedicated substantial resources to promoting our brand through multiple advertising and marketing channels, participation in trade shows, sponsoring events, merchandising, and by leveraging strategic relationships. We expect our advertising efforts will increase in fiscal year 2008 relative to the prior year as we more actively promote TiVo's brand and features. In addition, we expect that Comcast and Cox will begin to promote and deploy TiVo-branded DVR software to their subscribers during fiscal year 2008.

**Extend TiVo Product Beyond US Market.** We believe there is a large opportunity to leverage the TiVo service and technology outside the United States. For example, we have a minority interest in TGC, Inc. which we have licensed certain of our technology to for use in specified Asian countries, including China and Taiwan, and a distribution agreement with Cablevision Mexico, which is owned by Televisa, to provide the TiVo service to digital cable subscribers in Mexico City. We expect to consider additional international partnerships and distribution agreements over the next year.

## **Our Technology**

TiVo has developed a technology portfolio that makes available the TiVo service on a standalone retail DVR product line, on the integrated set-top boxes of a major satellite television provider, DIRECTV, and is expected to be available on certain set-top boxes for cable television providers, Comcast and Cox, during fiscal year 2008. We anticipate making the TiVo service available on set-top boxes of additional cable television providers in the future. TiVo's technology for enabling the TiVo service includes: the TiVo service client software platform, the TiVo service infrastructure, and TiVo-enabled DVR hardware design.

**TiVo Service Client Software.** The TiVo service client software runs on TiVo-enabled DVRs. It consists of operational software required for a TiVo-enabled DVR to deliver the TiVo service. The software includes system components such as a media-oriented file system, a high-performance transactional database, an integrated security system, and application components such as media management and user interface. We have enhanced the client software to support multiple services and applications, such as digital music and photos. The TiVo client software manages interaction with the TiVo service infrastructure. After the initial set-up of the TiVo service, the TiVo-enabled DVR will automatically connect to the TiVo service infrastructure over a dial-up or broadband connection to download the program guide data, client software upgrades, Showcases, and other content.

We are currently extending the TiVo service client software to enable future deployment on certain commonly used integrated DVR set-top boxes. Under the terms of our agreement with Comcast, for example, Comcast intends to make the TiVo service available as a software upgrade to the already installed base of certain Motorola DVRs deployed by Comcast. We also intend to extend the TiVo service to run on other DVR set-top boxes capable of supporting Comcast-deployed middleware and forthcoming Open Cable Application Platform (OCAP) solutions.

**TiVo Service Infrastructure.** The TiVo service infrastructure enables the ongoing operation of the TiVo service, managing the distribution of proprietary services, and specialized content such as program guide data, Showcases, and TiVo client software upgrades. It interfaces with our billing and

## **Table of Contents**

customer support systems for service authorization and bug tracking. In addition, the TiVo service infrastructure collects anonymous viewing information uploaded from TiVo-enabled DVRs for use in our audience research measurement efforts. The infrastructure has also been designed to work with the networks of service provider customers, for example, by utilizing DIRECTV's satellite bandwidth to deliver data to DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service.

**TiVo-Enabled DVR Hardware Design.** The TiVo-enabled DVR hardware design is a specification developed by TiVo for set-top boxes containing a hard disk drive, a CPU and memory, digital video chips, a modem, and other components. We provide this design to our contract manufacturer that produces TiVo-branded DVRs. The DVR hardware design has been integrated into a variety of products including standalone TiVo service DVRs, DIRECTV receivers, DVD players, and DVD recorders. The TiVo-enabled DVR hardware design includes a modular front-end that allows the basic platform to be used for digital and analog broadcast, digital and analog cable, and satellite applications. In addition, certain designs include USB ports to allow connection to broadband networks and external devices to enable existing and future services. A TiVo-enabled DVR without a subscription to the TiVo service has minimal functionality.

## **Significant Relationships**

**Comcast.** On March 15, 2005, we entered into a non-exclusive licensing and marketing agreement with entities affiliated with Comcast Corporation. Pursuant to this agreement, we agreed to develop a TiVo-branded software solution for deployment on Comcast's DVR platforms, which would enable the TiVo user interface and DVR application, which includes features, such as WishList®, and Season Pass. In addition, we agreed to develop an advertising management system for deployment on Comcast platforms to enable the provision of local and national advertising to Comcast subscribers. Comcast will pay a recurring monthly fee per Comcast subscriber who receives the TiVo service through Comcast. Comcast has also paid us fees for licensing the TiVo technology, and will continue to pay us fees for engineering services for the development and integration of the TiVo service software solution (subject to adjustment under certain circumstances) and will also pay us for the advertising management system.

The initial term of this agreement is for seven years from completion of the TiVo service software solution, with Comcast permitted to renew for additional 1-year terms for up to a total of 8 additional years as long as certain deployment thresholds have been achieved. During the term of the agreement, TiVo will provide Comcast with certain customer and maintenance support and will provide certain additional development work. TiVo will have the continuing right to sell certain types of advertising in connection with the TiVo service offered through Comcast. TiVo will also have a limited right to sell certain types of advertising on other Comcast DVR set-top boxes enabled with the TiVo advertising management system, subject to Comcast's option to terminate such right in exchange for certain advertising-related payments.

Development and certain initial deployment of the TiVo service software solution is expected to launch in its initial market in the near future. Development and deployment of the TiVo advertising management system is targeted to begin after the second anniversary of this agreement, but by no later than February 15, 2008, unless the parties agree on a later date. In the event development of the TiVo service software solution and the TiVo advertising management system have not been completed by the relevant deadlines, we could be subject to certain consequences, including, but not limited to, termination of the agreement. As part of this agreement, Comcast received a non-exclusive, non-transferable license to our intellectual property in order to deploy the TiVo service software solution and advertising management system, including certain trademark branding rights and a covenant not to assert under TiVo's patents, which rights extend only to Comcast Corporation, its affiliates, and certain of its vendors and suppliers with respect to Comcast products and services. Such non-exclusive, non-transferable license to the Company's intellectual property will, under certain circumstances, continue after the termination of this agreement. In addition, Comcast is entitled to certain most favored customer terms as compared with other multi-channel video distributors who license certain TiVo technology. Pursuant to the terms of this agreement, Comcast has the right to terminate the agreement in the event the Company is the subject of certain change of control transactions involving any of certain specified companies.

## **Table of Contents**

**DIRECTV.** DIRECTV is the largest provider of satellite television in the U.S. We have had a longstanding relationship with DIRECTV from 1999 to the present to provide the TiVo service to its customer base. As of January 31, 2007, we have approximately 2.7 million subscriptions through this relationship. In the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, we reported \$26.0 million of DIRECTV-related revenues, which include subscription revenues and DIRECTV-related advertising revenues. This represents 10% of our total net revenues.

DIRECTV currently pays us a recurring monthly per-household fee for access to the technology needed to offer its customers the TiVo service. We incur limited recurring expenses. We also recognize revenue from DIRECTV for engineering services work on integrated DIRECTV satellite receivers with TiVo service and the related service infrastructure. We are continuing to provide DIRECTV with engineering services related to currently installed hardware and updates and feature enhancements for existing platforms and customers.

Additionally, DIRECTV distributes features that enable advanced automatic recording capabilities and the delivery of promotional video to DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service. Subject to certain restrictions and exceptions, both DIRECTV and TiVo may sell advertising and audience research measurement data, with each party retaining all their respective revenues generated from such sales.

DIRECTV has launched a competing DVR by NDS to compete with DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service. The new DIRECTV DVRs include software by NDS and are not manufactured under license from TiVo. DIRECTV has stated that its core initiatives and new customer acquisition efforts will focus on its new DVR from NDS and has stated its intention to add high definition programming in a format that is not compatible with the existing TiVo-enabled DVR distributed by DIRECTV. As a result, we have seen a reduction in the number of DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service subscriptions, a trend that we expect to continue.

On April 7, 2006, we entered into the Seventh Amendment of our Development Agreement, dated as of February 15, 2002, with DIRECTV, Inc. Under this amendment, which amends the expiration date of the Development Agreement from February 15, 2007, to February 15, 2010, we will continue to provide maintenance and support for DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service through the expiration date of the Development Agreement. In addition, DIRECTV received the right to continue to distribute DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service through February 15, 2007, and a related grace period as set forth in the Development Agreement. Further, we agreed that neither party would assert its patents against the other party with respect to each company's products and services deployed prior to the expiration of the agreement, subject to limited exceptions. DIRECTV will continue to pay us a monthly fee for each household using DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service similar to the amount paid by DIRECTV for households with DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service deployed since February 15, 2002, subject to a monthly minimum payment by DIRECTV. We reserve a portion of these fees as a non-refundable credit to fund mutually agreed annual development, maintenance, and support services.

On April 7, 2006, we also entered into the First Amendment of our Amended and Restated Services Agreement, dated as of March 31, 2005, with DIRECTV. This amendment extends the term of the Services Agreement until February 15, 2010, and provides DIRECTV with the ability to obtain additional technical support and training for its use of advertising-related software tools with DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service.

**Cox.** On August 22, 2006, we entered into a non-exclusive licensing and distribution agreement with Cox Communications (CoxCom, Inc. or Cox). Pursuant to the agreement, we have agreed to develop a TiVo-branded software solution for deployment on Cox's DVR platforms, which would enable Cox to offer our DVR and advertising software to its customers and advertising clients respectively. In addition, we have agreed to develop an advertising management system for deployment on Cox platforms to enable the provision of local and national advertising to Cox subscribers.

The initial term of our agreement is for five years from completion of the TiVo service software solution, but no longer than seven years after the effective date of the agreement. During the term of the agreement, we will provide Cox with certain customer support and maintenance services.

**Table of Contents**

We will have the continuing right to sell certain types of advertising in connection with our service offered through Cox. We will also have a right to sell certain types of advertising on other Cox DVR set-top boxes enabled with the advertising management system. As part of the agreement, Cox is receiving a non-exclusive, non-transferable license to specific TiVo intellectual property to deploy the TiVo service software solution and advertising management system, including certain trademark branding rights. Cox will also reimburse us for the cost of certain third-party license fees. In addition, Cox may be entitled to certain most favored customer terms if we enter into future agreements with multi-channel video distributors whose commitment to deploy our DVRs and advertising software is less than Cox's commitment. Cox has the right to terminate the agreement in the event we are the subject of certain change of control transactions involving any of certain specified companies. In the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, we had not yet begun to recognize revenues or expenses under this agreement.

**Hardware Manufacturers.** Several consumer electronics manufacturers, including Toshiba, Humax, and Pioneer, have manufactured and distributed TiVo-enabled standalone DVRs during the last three years. Each manufacturer was responsible for the manufacturing and distribution of its branded DVRs and DVD recorders. We are solely responsible for the activation of the TiVo service on these DVRs or DVD recorders if the purchaser of the unit decides to purchase a subscription to the TiVo service. A TiVo-enabled DVR without a subscription to the TiVo service has almost no functionality beyond the ability to pause, rewind, and fast-forward through up to thirty minutes of live television. In the case of DVD recorders manufactured by Toshiba and Pioneer, we are also responsible for providing a version of the TiVo service, called TiVo Basic, for no additional fee that provides three days worth of program guide data, but otherwise limited recording capability. We also engage contract manufacturers to build TiVo-enabled standalone DVRs. We distribute these DVRs, selling them both directly to consumers and to major retailers. The table below shows the breakdown of DVRs compatible with the TiVo service that were manufactured during the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005. The table below does not include TiVo-enabled DVRs integrated with satellite set-top boxes of DIRECTV which are manufactured by DIRECTV and its manufacturers.

|                                                           | Fiscal Year Ended January 31, |             |             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
|                                                           | 2007                          | 2006        | 2005        |
| <b>TiVo-Enabled DVRs Manufactured by:</b>                 |                               |             |             |
| Hardware Manufacturers                                    | 1%                            | 12%         | 64%         |
| Contract Manufacturers for TiVo                           | 99%                           | 88%         | 34%         |
| Licensing and Engineering Professional Services Customers | 0%                            | 0%          | 2%          |
| <b>Total Manufactured TiVo-enabled DVRs</b>               | <b>100%</b>                   | <b>100%</b> | <b>100%</b> |

**TGC, Inc.** On August 9, 2004, we acquired a minority interest in TGC, Inc. ( "TGC" ), a newly formed independent entity. In exchange for our interest in TGC, we granted TGC a license to certain aspects of our technology for use in The People's Republic of China (China), Singapore, Hong Kong, Macau and The Republic of China (Taiwan). Through TGC, we have gained access to high quality engineering resources for the design and development of additional digital video recorder platforms. TGC engages in design, development, and licensing activities related to digital video recorder platforms and technology. In fiscal year 2007, TGC performed design and development activities related to a potential TiVo product for the U.S. market. In December 2005 TGC launched a DVR product that includes TiVo technology and branding in Taiwan. In mid-2006, TGC launched a DVR product that includes TiVo technology and branding in China. We expect that TGC will pursue additional opportunities to market TiVo technology in Singapore, Hong Kong, and Macau. TGC's technology license from TiVo is exclusive for the first five years and non-exclusive to TGC for a perpetual period afterwards. Subject to certain terms and conditions, this license grants TGC limited access to portions of TiVo's source code and provides for both parties to exchange improvements to that code during the first five years. We will be entitled to royalty payments from TGC in limited circumstances. In addition, TGC has agreed not to market, without our prior consent, any DVR products or DVR services that do not support the TiVo service outside of China, Singapore, Hong Kong, Macau and Taiwan. In the United States, TGC may offer DVR products that support the U.S. TiVo service to TiVo, authorized TiVo licensees, or with TiVo's prior approval, retail distributors.

---

## **Table of Contents**

### **Sales and Marketing**

**Consumer Offerings.** We sell subscriptions to the TiVo service directly to consumers who have purchased a TiVo-enabled DVR. We sell TiVo service-only subscriptions either for a monthly subscription rate of up to \$19.95 (with discounts available to subscribers who have multiple subscriptions to the TiVo service or during special limited promotions), or a pre-pay option between \$179 for one-year, \$299 for two-years or \$399 for three-years (currently a special limited time offer priced at \$299) of TiVo service. We no longer offer new product lifetime service subscriptions for general sale to the public. TiVo-enabled DVRs are available from major retailers across the United States, including Best Buy, Circuit City, and Radio Shack. To drive sales while managing costs, we have shared marketing expenses with key retailers, and in some cases, we have offered to share a portion of the subscription revenues.

We also sell a bundled offering of a TiVo-enabled DVR and a subscription to the TiVo service through our direct sales channel. We change pricing for our TiVo service and TiVo enabled DVRs from time-to-time in response to market conditions and consumer demand. Current pricing offered through our direct channel is:

The price for an 80-hr TiVo Series2 DT (dual tuner) DVR and a one-year service commitment is \$16.95 a month or \$179 prepaid plus a \$99.99 box price.

The price for an 80-hr TiVo Series2 DT and a two-year service commitment is \$14.95 a month or \$299 prepaid plus a \$99.99 box price.

The price for an 80-hr TiVo Series2 DT and a three-year service commitment is \$12.95 a month or \$399 (special limited time offer priced at \$299) prepaid plus a \$99.99 box price.

**Services to Television Service Providers.** We also sell our technology and services to television service providers, such as DIRECTV, Comcast, and Cox who then market (or in the case of Comcast and Cox, plan to market in the future) the TiVo service to their subscribers either directly or, in the case of DIRECTV, also through major retailers across the United States.

**Services to the Advertising Industry.** We also sell advertising and audience research measurement services, through a dedicated team of salespeople and through partnerships with third parties like IRI.

### **Customer Service and Support**

For our TiVo-Owned standalone DVRs, we provide customer support through outsourced service providers as well as our internal customer service personnel. For our DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service, DIRECTV is primarily responsible for customer support. When launched, Comcast and Cox will be primarily responsible for customer support for their subscribers to the TiVo service. We expect to provide training and other assistance to Comcast and Cox.

Individual customers have access to an Internet-based repository for technical information and troubleshooting techniques. They also can obtain support through other means such as the TiVo website, web forums, email, and telephone support.

We offer a manufacturer's warranty on our TiVo-Owned standalone DVRs of 90 days for labor and one year for parts. For our TiVo Package subscriptions that include both a TiVo-Owned standalone DVR and a subscription to our service, we extend such manufacturer's warranty for parts only for the duration of the subscription which may last as long as three years. We contract with third parties to handle warranty repair.

### **Research and Product Development**

Our research and development efforts are focused on designing and developing the components necessary to enable the TiVo service. These activities include both hardware and software development.

**Table of Contents**

| TiVo Inc.                         | Fiscal Year Ended<br>January 31, |         |         |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------|---------|
|                                   | 2007                             | 2006    | 2005    |
|                                   | (in millions)                    |         |         |
| Research and Development Expenses | \$ 50.7                          | \$ 41.1 | \$ 37.6 |

Although our total company employee headcount increased by approximately 7% in fiscal year 2007, we increased the number of our regular, temporary, and part-time employees engaged in research and development by 9% from a total of 264 to 288 as of January 31, 2007 compared to January 31, 2006.

**Manufacturing and Supply Chain**

We outsource the manufacturing of our products to third-party manufacturers. This outsourcing extends from prototyping to volume manufacturing and includes activities such as material procurement, final assembly, test, quality control, and shipment to distribution centers. Today the majority of our products are assembled in Mexico. Our primary distribution center is operated on an outsourced basis in Texas.

The components that make up our products are purchased from various vendors, including key suppliers such as Broadcom, which supplies microprocessors. Some of our components, including microprocessors, chassis, remote controls, and certain discrete components are currently supplied by sole source suppliers.

**Seasonality**

Sales of our DVRs and subscriptions to the TiVo service are affected by seasonality. Thus, we generate a significant number of our annual DVR sales and new subscriptions during and immediately after the holiday shopping season with associated increases in revenue. We also incur significant increases in expenses in the second and third quarter related to hardware costs, rebates, revenue share and other payments to channel, and sales and marketing expenses in anticipation of the holiday shopping season.

**Competition**

We believe that the principal competitive factors in the DVR market are brand recognition and awareness, functionality, ease of use, availability, and pricing. We currently see two primary categories of DVR competitors: DVRs offered by satellite, cable, and telecommunications operators and DVRs offered by consumer electronics and software companies.

**Satellite, Cable, and Telecommunications, DVR Competitors.** We compete against cable and satellite set-top boxes that integrate DVR functionality.

*Satellite:* EchoStar offers a range of DVR models, including standard definition and high definition models, most of which offer dual tuner capabilities. Certain models can output signals to multiple TVs within the household. DIRECTV has introduced a DVR technology from NDS including both standard definition and high definition broadcasts.

*Cable:* Cable operators have made DVR technology available on set-top boxes such as from Scientific-Atlanta (owned by Cisco) and Motorola. These products combine digital and analog cable reception with DVR functionality; some versions offer dual tuner and/or high definition capabilities. Other competition in the cable DVR market comes from other software providers including TV Guide, Microsoft, Aptiv, Digital, and Digeo.

*Telecommunications:* Telecommunications operators have recently begun to commercially deploy DVR technology in connection with the provision of television services to consumers either in partnership with other television providers, such as

## **Table of Contents**

AT&T's HomeZone and Dish Network service, or on their own, such as Verizon FIOS service. These products integrate DVR functionality with other advanced features such as Video-On-Demand and the remote scheduling of recordings. U.S. cable operators are currently deploying server-based Video on Demand (VOD) technology from SeaChange, Concurrent, and others, which could potentially evolve into competition. Additionally, we are aware of at least one U.S. cable operator, Cablevision, Inc., which has announced plans to test server-based DVR technology. Server-based VOD and DVR technology rely on content servers located within the cable operator's central head-end that stream video across the network to a digital cable set-top box within the consumer's home. Cable operators can use server-based VOD and DVR technology to deliver movies, television shows, and other content to consumers. Consumers can watch this programming on demand, with VCR-like pausing and rewinding capabilities. Operators can charge consumers for access to VOD content on a per-transaction or monthly subscription basis, or can offer content without charge. To the extent that cable operators offer regular television programming as part of their server-based VOD offerings and DVR technology, consumers have an alternate means of watching time-shifted shows besides DVRs.

**Consumer Electronics Competitors.** We compete against several types of products with basic time-slot based recordings or enhanced electronic program guide (EPG) based DVR functionality offered by consumer electronics companies. These products record an analog television signal output from a cable or satellite set-top box, analog cable feed, or antenna.

*Standalone DVRs and hard drive-equipped DVD recorders, TVs and game consoles:* Several consumer electronics companies, including Panasonic and Sony, produce DVD recorders with hard drives. In addition, several consumer electronics companies, including RCA and Toshiba, offer TVs that can connect to external hard drives to allow for recording of television programming. Some of these TVs offer CableCARD functionality, allowing the receipt of encrypted digital cable programming without the need for a digital cable set-top box. In general, these hard-drive equipped DVD recorders and TVs do not require DVR service fees and offer basic DVR functionality. In the future, companies such as Sony and Microsoft could incorporate DVR technology into their video game consoles, and Microsoft has now enabled the digital delivery of video programming over the internet to its game console.

*Personal computers with DVR software:* Microsoft's Windows XP Media Center and Vista Editions contain expanded digital media features including enhanced DVR functionality. PC manufacturers including Dell and Hewlett Packard offer PCs running this Microsoft software and other PC manufacturers such as Apple Computer may offer similar functionality in the future. Replay TV now offers its DVR service as a software program which can be loaded onto a personal computer similar to products such as MythTV and SnapStream.

**Licensing Competitors.** Our licensing revenues depend upon both our ability to successfully negotiate licensing agreements with our consumer electronics and service provider customers and, in turn, upon our customers' successful commercialization of their underlying products. In addition, we face competition from companies such as Microsoft, Gemstar, OpenTV, NDS, D&M Holdings, Digeo, Gotuit, and 2Wire, which have created competing digital video recording technologies. Such companies may offer more economically attractive licensing agreements to service providers and manufacturers of DVRs.

**Established Competition for Advertising Budgets.** Digital video recorder services, in general, and TiVo, specifically, compete with other advertising media such as print, radio, television, Video on Demand, internet, and other emerging advertising platforms for a share of advertisers' total advertising budgets. If advertisers do not perceive digital video recording services, in general, and TiVo specifically, as an effective advertising medium, they may be reluctant to advertise on the TiVo service. In addition, advertisers may not

## **Table of Contents**

support or embrace the TiVo technology due to a belief that our technology's ability to fast-forward through commercials will reduce the effectiveness of general television advertising.

### **Patents and Intellectual Property**

We have filed patent applications relating to many critical aspects of the design, functionality, and operation of TiVo products and services. We have been awarded approximately 102 foreign and domestic patents and have approximately 158 foreign and domestic patent applications pending. We have also filed patent applications related to technology that we may incorporate in future versions of our products and services. Patents we hold the rights to include:

U.S. patent number 6,327,418, entitled *Method and Apparatus Implementing Random Access and Time-Based Functions on a Continuous Stream of Formatted Digital Data*, originally filed on April 3, 1998, which describes a method of controlling streaming media in a digital device, including the functions that enable DVRs to pause live TV as well as rewind, fast-forward, play, play faster, play slower, and play in reverse television signals cached by the DVR. We refer to this as the "TrickPlay" patent. The expiration date of the TrickPlay patent is April 3, 2018.

U.S. patent number 6,792,195 entitled *Method and Apparatus Implementing Random Access and Time-Based Functions on a Continuous Stream of Formatted Digital Data*, which is a continuation of the TrickPlay patent. The expiration date of this patent is likewise April 3, 2018.

U.S. patent 6,233,389, entitled *Multimedia Time Warping System*, originally filed on July 30, 1998, which describes many of the key inventions associated with the TiVo-enabled DVR software and hardware design. We refer to this as the "TimeWarp" patent. Key inventions claimed in the patent include a method for recording one program while playing back another or watching a program as it is recording, often referred to as time-shifting the program; a method for efficient and low-cost processing and synchronizing of the various multimedia streams in a television signal such as video, audio, and closed-captioning, and a storage format that easily supports advanced TrickPlay capabilities. The expiration date of the TimeWarp patent is July 30, 2018.

TiVo has also acquired the exclusive right to license and enforce U.S. patent number 5,241,428 entitled *Variable-Delay Video Recorder* known in the industry as the Goldwasser Patent. Filed in March 1991, the Goldwasser Patent is one of the earliest patents regarding digital video recorders of which we are aware. This patent covers devices that permit the simultaneous recording and playback of video material with a variable time delay between recording and playback of a given video program segment. The expiration date of the Goldwasser Patent is March 12, 2011.

We have also purchased 12 foreign and domestic patents and 6 foreign patent applications from International Business Machines Corporation, or IBM. These patents and patent applications generally relate to audience research measurement, integration of television signals with internet access, automatic rescheduling of recordings, content screening, enhanced program information search, and electronic program guide interface enhancements.

Additionally, on September 28, 2006, we entered into a patent cross license agreement with IBM, under which we paid certain cash considerations to IBM, and each party granted to the other a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free license to such party's patents that are entitled to a priority date on or before September 28, 2006, including all patents and patent applications in existence as of that date with limited exceptions. The license granted by IBM to us extends to all products other than general purpose data processing products and data storage devices that are primarily sold separately from other hardware. The license that we granted to IBM extends to all products, other than digital media recorders and digital media recorder software. No license was granted, directly or by implication, to permit the combination of any product with any other item.

## **Table of Contents**

Among others, we have secured U.S. registrations for the marks TiVo, the TiVo logo, the TiVo Smile design, WishList, TiVo Central, Can't Miss TV, Ipreview, TiVoMatic, TiVo, TV Your Way, What you want, when you want it, TiVolution, Active Preview, Home Media Organizer, Life's too short for bad TV, Overtime Scheduler, Personal TV, Primetime Anytime, TiVo Series2 (logo and text), the Jump logo, the Thumbs Up logo, and the Thumbs Down logo. We have filed many other trademark applications covering substantially all of our trade dress, sound effects, logos, and slogans, including: DIRECTIVO, Season Pass, and See it, want it, get it. These applications are currently pending with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office. Additionally, we have international trademark applications pending for several of these trademarks. We have licensed the use of our name and logo to some of our customers and consumer electronics manufacturers.

We anticipate ongoing progress in our establishment of a defensible and useful intellectual property portfolio; however, we cannot assure you that current patents will be enforceable or our current patent applications will ever be allowed or granted. See Part I, Item 1A, Risk Factors Our success depends on our ability to secure and protect our patents, trademarks, and other proprietary rights and Pending Intellectual Property Litigation for additional information concerning our intellectual property.

## **Privacy Policy**

We have adopted a privacy policy, which we make available on our website and deliver to each new subscriber to the TiVo service. This policy was last updated in May 2006 to cover new features that we have introduced and plan to introduce in the future. This policy explains that we collect certain types of information such as anonymous viewing and diagnostic information, but all viewing-information that is linked or associated with an individual identity will not be disclosed without the viewer's affirmative consent. We further give subscribers the ability to opt-out from the collection of anonymous viewing information and diagnostic information log files.

We have designed a system that ensures that any viewing information transmitted from a TiVo enabled DVR is anonymous and remains unidentifiable to a particular viewer (known as anonymous viewing information), unless that subscriber affirmatively consents to such identification before any viewing data leaves the DVR. Anonymous viewing information is collected separately from any information that identifies a viewer personally. As a result, we may be able to use this anonymous information to tell a broadcast or advertising client the percentage of our viewers that recorded a particular program or advertisement, but we will not know, nor be able to tell the client, which of our viewers did so, unless a viewer decides to provide that information.

## **Employees**

At April 3, 2007, we employed approximately 451 employees, including 48 in service operations, 246 in research and development, 44 in sales and marketing, and 113 in general and administration. We also employ, from time to time, a number of temporary and part-time employees as well as consultants on a contract basis. Our future success will depend in part on our ability to attract, train, retain, and motivate highly qualified employees. We may not be successful in attracting and retaining such personnel. Our employees are not represented by a collective bargaining organization and we have never experienced a work stoppage or strike. Our management considers employee relations to be good.

**Table of Contents****Executive Officers and Key Employees (as of April 3, 2007):**

| <b>Name</b>      | <b>Age</b> | <b>Position</b>                                                                                         |
|------------------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Thomas S. Rogers | 52         | Chief Executive Officer and President                                                                   |
| Steve Sordello   | 37         | Chief Financial Officer                                                                                 |
| James Barton     | 48         | Chief Technical Officer and Senior Vice President                                                       |
| Jeffrey Klugman  | 46         | Senior Vice President and General Manager, Service Provider and Media and Advertising Services Division |
| Mark A. Roberts  | 46         | Senior Vice President of Consumer Products and Operations                                               |
| Matthew Zinn     | 42         | Senior Vice President, General Counsel, Secretary and Chief Privacy Officer                             |
| Nancy Kato       | 52         | Senior Vice President, Human Resources                                                                  |
| Joe Miller       | 40         | Senior Vice President of Consumer Sales and Affiliate Marketing                                         |

*Thomas S. Rogers* was appointed by our Board to serve as a director in September 2003 and was named President and Chief Executive Officer of TiVo, effective July 1, 2005. In connection with being appointed as our President and Chief Executive Officer, Mr. Rogers resigned as Vice Chairman of our board of directors and as a Class II Director and was immediately reappointed by our board of directors as a Class III Director. Mr. Rogers served as Chairman of the Board of Teleglobe International Holdings, Ltd. (NASDAQ:TLGB), a provider of international voice, data, internet, and mobile roaming services, a position he held from November 2004 to February 2006. From July 2003 on, he also has served as Chairman of TRget Media, a media industry investment and operations advisory firm. From 2004 until July 2005, he also served as the Senior Operating Executive for media and entertainment for Cerberus Capital Management, a large private equity firm. From October 1999 until April 2003, Mr. Rogers was Chairman and CEO of Primedia, Inc. (NYSE:PRM), a print, video, and online media company. From January 1987 until October 1999, Mr. Rogers held positions with National Broadcast Company, Inc. including President of NBC Cable and Executive Vice President. Mr. Rogers holds a B.A. degree in Government from Wesleyan University and a J.D. degree from Columbia Law School.

*Steve Sordello* was named Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer in August 2006. Prior to joining TiVo, Mr. Sordello served as Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer at Ask Jeeves from April 2001 until October 2005, when the company was acquired by IAC/InterActiveCorp. Prior to Ask Jeeves, Mr. Sordello held senior positions at Adobe Systems, Inc. and Syntex Corporation. Mr. Sordello holds a B.S. degree in Management/Accounting and an M.B.A. degree from Santa Clara University.

*James Barton* is a co-founder of TiVo and served as TiVo's Vice President of Research and Development, Chief Technical Officer and Director since our inception to January 2004 and is currently Chief Technical Officer and Senior Vice President. From June 1996 to August 1997, Mr. Barton was President and Chief Executive Officer of Network Age Software, Inc., a company that he founded to develop software products targeted at managed electronic distribution. From November 1994 to May 1996, Mr. Barton served as Chief Technical Officer of Interactive Digital Solutions Company, a joint venture of Silicon Graphics Incorporation (SGI) and AT&T Network Systems created to develop interactive television systems. From June 1993 to November 1994, Mr. Barton served as Vice President and General Manager of the Media Systems Division of SGI. From January 1990 to May 1991, Mr. Barton served as Vice President and General Manager for the Systems Software Division of Silicon Graphics. Prior to joining SGI, Mr. Barton held technical and management positions with Hewlett-Packard and Bell Laboratories. Mr. Barton holds a B.S. degree in Electrical Engineering and an M.S. degree in Computer Science from the University of Colorado at Boulder.

*Jeffrey Klugman* was named Senior Vice President and General Manager, Service Provider and Media and Advertising Services Division in April 2005. Mr. Klugman had served as Vice President of Technology Licensing from December 2001 until February 2004 and Vice President,

## **Table of Contents**

TiVo Platform Business from February 2004 until April 2005. Prior to joining TiVo, Mr. Klugman was CEO of PointsBeyond.com, an internet-portal start-up focused on outdoor activities and adventures. In 1999, Mr. Klugman was Vice President of Marketing and Business Development for Quantum Corporation's Consumer Electronics Business Unit. Mr. Klugman holds a B.S. degree in engineering from Carnegie Mellon University and an M.B.A. degree from the Stanford Business School.

*Mark A. Roberts* was named Senior Vice President of Consumer Products and Operations in October 2005 responsible for Consumer Products Engineering and Product Strategy, Manufacturing, Distribution, Call Center, Service Operations, Information Technology, Facilities and Broadcast Center Operations. He had served as Senior Vice President of Engineering since December 2002 until October 2005 and Chief Information Officer of TiVo from March 1999 until December 2002. Prior to joining TiVo, he served as Vice President of Information Technology at Acuson Corporation, a medical ultrasound company, from March 1996 to March 1999. From July 1990 to March 1996, Mr. Roberts was Director of Information Systems at SGI. Mr. Roberts holds a B.S. degree in Economics from Santa Clara University.

*Matthew Zinn* was named Senior Vice President, General Counsel, Secretary, and Chief Privacy Officer in April 2006. Mr. Zinn has served as Vice President, General Counsel, and Chief Privacy Officer since July 2000 and as Corporate Secretary since November 2003. From May 1998 to July 2000, Mr. Zinn was the Senior Attorney, Broadband Law and Policy for the MediaOne Group, a global communications company. From August 1995 to May 1998, Mr. Zinn served as corporate counsel for Continental Cablevision, the third largest cable television operator in the United States. From November 1993 to August 1995, he was an associate with the Washington, D.C., law firm of Cole, Raywid & Braverman, where he represented cable operators in federal, state, and local matters. Mr. Zinn holds a B.A. degree in Political Science from the University of Vermont and holds a J.D. degree from the George Washington University National Law Center.

*Nancy Kato* was named Senior Vice President of Human Resources in April 2006. Ms. Kato has served as Vice President, Human Resources since January 2005. From January 2003 to January 2005 Ms. Kato was Vice President of Global Compensation at Hewlett-Packard. From December 2000 to October 2002 Ms. Kato was Senior Vice President of Human Resources for Ariba. She has also held senior roles at Compaq and Tandem. Ms. Kato holds a B.S. in Health Sciences and M.A. in Education and Counseling from San Jose State University.

*Joe Miller* was named Senior Vice President, Consumer Sales and Distribution in September 2006 and is responsible for all aspects of the company's TiVo-Owned sales and distribution efforts. Mr. Miller had served as TiVo's Vice President, Consumer Sales and Distribution from May 1999 to August 2006. Prior to joining TiVo, Mr. Miller was with US Satellite Broadcasting from February 1994 to May 1999 as General Manager of Retail Sales and prior to that Mr. Miller was a National Sales Manager for Cox Satellite Programming. Mr. Miller holds a B.A. degree in Public Relations from Southwest Texas State.

## **Other Information**

TiVo was incorporated in August 1997 as a Delaware corporation and is located in Alviso, California. In August of 2000, we formed a wholly owned subsidiary, TiVo (UK) Ltd., in the United Kingdom. In October of 2001, we formed a subsidiary, TiVo International, Inc., a Delaware corporation. On January 12, 2004, we acquired Strangeberry, Inc., a small Palo Alto based technology company specializing in using home network and broadband technologies to create new entertainment experiences on television. On July 16, 2004, TiVo Intl. II, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of TiVo Inc., was incorporated in the Cayman Islands. On March 22, 2005, TiVo Brands LLC, a wholly owned subsidiary of TiVo Inc., was incorporated in the State of Delaware.

We maintain an Internet website at the following address: [www.tivo.com](http://www.tivo.com). The information on our website is not incorporated by reference in this annual report on Form 10-K or in any other filings we make with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC").

We make available on or through our website certain reports and amendments to those reports that we file with or furnish to the SEC in accordance with the Securities Exchange Act of 1934

## **Table of Contents**

(the Securities Exchange Act ). These include our annual reports on Form 10-K, our quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, and our current reports on Form 8-K. We make this information available on or through our website free of charge as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file the information with, or furnish it to, the SEC.

### **ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS**

The risks and uncertainties described below are not the only ones we face. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known to us or that we currently deem immaterial may also affect our business.

#### **We have incurred significant net losses and may never achieve sustained profitability.**

We have incurred significant net losses and have had substantial negative cash flows. During the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, our net losses were \$(47.8) million, \$(37.0) million, and \$(79.8) million, respectively. As of January 31, 2007, we had an accumulated deficit of \$(741.8) million. The size of future net losses will depend in part on our subscription revenues and on our expenses. We will need to generate significant additional revenues to achieve profitability.

#### **We face intense competition from a number of sources, which may impair our revenues, increase our subscription acquisition cost, and hinder our ability to generate new subscriptions.**

The DVR market is rapidly evolving, and we face significant competition. Moreover, the market for in-home entertainment is intensely competitive and subject to rapid technological change. As a result of this intense competition, we could incur increased subscription acquisition costs that could adversely affect our ability to reach or sustain profitability in the future. If new technologies render the DVR market obsolete, we may be unable to generate sufficient revenue to cover our expenses and obligations.

We believe that the principal competitive factors in the DVR market are brand recognition and awareness, functionality, ease of use, availability, and pricing. We currently see two primary categories of DVR competitors: DVRs offered by telecommunications, cable and satellite operators and DVRs offered by consumer electronics and software companies. For more information on our competitors, see our discussion on competition in Item 1. Business.

**Licensing Competitors.** Our licensing revenues depend both upon our ability to successfully negotiate licensing agreements with our consumer electronics and service provider customers and, in turn, upon our customers' successful commercialization of their underlying products. In addition, we face competition from companies such as Microsoft, Gemstar, OpenTV, NDS, D&M Holdings, Digeo, Ucentric, Gotuit, and 2Wire, which have created competing digital video recording technologies. Such companies may offer more economically attractive licensing agreements to service providers and manufacturers of DVRs.

**Established Competition for Advertising Budgets.** Digital video recorder services, in general, and TiVo, specifically, compete with other advertising media such as print, radio, television, internet, Video on Demand, and other emerging advertising platforms for a share of advertisers' total advertising budgets. If advertisers do not perceive digital video recording services, in general, and TiVo specifically, as an effective advertising medium, they may be reluctant to advertise on the TiVo service. In addition, advertisers may not support or embrace the TiVo technology due to a belief that our technology's ability to fast-forward through commercials will reduce the effectiveness of general television advertising.

#### **We depend on a limited number of third parties to manufacture, distribute, and supply critical components, assemblies, and services for the DVRs that enable the TiVo service. We may be unable to operate our business if these parties do not perform their obligations.**

The TiVo service is enabled through the use of a DVR manufactured for us by a third-party contract manufacturer and a limited number of other third parties. In addition, we rely on sole suppliers for a number of key components for the DVRs. We also rely on third parties with whom we outsource supply-chain activities related to inventory warehousing, order fulfillment, distribution, and

## **Table of Contents**

other direct sales logistics. We cannot be sure that these parties will perform their obligations as expected or that any revenue, cost savings, or other benefits will be derived from the efforts of these parties. If any of these parties breaches or terminates their agreement with us or otherwise fails to perform their obligations in a timely manner, we may be delayed or prevented from commercializing our products and services. Because our relationships with these parties are non-exclusive, they may also support products and services that compete directly with us, or offer similar or greater support to our competitors. Any of these events could require us to undertake unforeseen additional responsibilities or devote additional resources to commercialize our products and services. This outcome would harm our ability to compete effectively and achieve increased market acceptance and brand recognition.

In addition, we face the following risks in relying on these third parties:

*If our manufacturing relationships are not successful, we may be unable to satisfy demand for our products and services.* We manufacture DVRs that enable the TiVo service through a third-party contract manufacturer. We also have entered and anticipate entering into agreements with consumer electronics manufacturers to manufacture and distribute DVRs that enable the TiVo service. However, we have no minimum volume commitments from any manufacturer. The ability of our consumer electronics manufacturers to reach sufficient production volume of DVRs to satisfy anticipated demand is subject to delays and unforeseen problems such as defects, shortages of critical components and cost overruns. Moreover, they will require substantial lead times to manufacture anticipated quantities of the DVRs that enable the TiVo service. Delays, product shortages, and other problems could impair our retail distribution and brand image and make it difficult for us to attract subscriptions. In addition, the loss of a manufacturer would require us to identify and contract with alternative sources of manufacturing, which we may be unable to do or which could prove time-consuming and expensive. Although we expect to continue to contract with additional consumer electronics companies for the manufacture of DVRs in the future, we may be unable to establish additional relationships on acceptable terms.

*We are dependent on sole suppliers for several key components and services. If these suppliers fail to perform their obligations, we may be unable to find alternative suppliers or deliver our products and services to our customers on time.* We currently rely on sole suppliers for a number of the key components used in the TiVo-enabled DVRs and the TiVo service. For example, Broadcom is the sole supplier of the MPEG2 encoder and decoder semiconductor devices.

We do not currently have a long-term written supply agreement with Broadcom. Therefore, Broadcom may not be contractually obligated to supply us with these key components on a long-term basis or at all. In addition to the above, we have several sole suppliers for key components of our products currently under development, although it is currently anticipated that those will be provided under signed supply agreements.

*Tribune is the sole supplier of the program guide data for the TiVo service.* Tribune Media Services, Inc., or Tribune, is the current sole supplier of program guide data for the TiVo service. Our current Television Listings Data Agreement with Tribune became effective on March 1, 2004 and has an initial term of three years and will automatically renew for up to two additional terms of one year each unless we notify Tribune of our desire to terminate the agreement at least 90 days before the end of the then-current term. Tribune may only terminate in the case of an uncured breach by TiVo. If Tribune breaches its obligation to provide us with data, or otherwise fails to perform its obligations under our agreement, we would be unable to provide certain aspects of the TiVo service to our customers. This would have serious repercussions on our brand and our ability to succeed in the market. We may be unable to secure an alternate source of guide data on acceptable terms.

If our arrangements or our consumer electronics manufacturers' arrangements with Broadcom or Tribune were to terminate or expire, or if we or our

## **Table of Contents**

manufacturers were unable to obtain sufficient quantities of these components or required program guide data from our suppliers, our search for alternate suppliers could result in significant delays, added expense or disruption in product or service availability.

*We depend upon third parties to provide supply chain services related to inventory management, order fulfillment, and direct sales logistics.* We rely on third party vendors to provide cost-effective and efficient supply chain services. Among other activities, these outsourced services relate to direct sales logistics, including order fulfillment, inventory management and warehousing, and distribution of inventory to third party retailers. If one or several of our third party supply chain partners were to discontinue services for us, our ability to fulfill direct sales orders and distribute inventory timely, cost effectively, or at all, would be hindered which could in turn harm our business.

*We are dependent on our major retail partners for distribution of our products to consumers.* We currently rely on our relationships with major retail distributors including Best Buy, Circuit City, Radio Shack, and others for distribution of TiVo-enabled DVRs. We do not typically enter into long-term volume commitments with our major retail distributors. If one or several of our major retail partners were to discontinue selling our products, the volume of TiVo-enabled DVRs sold to consumers could decrease which could in turn harm our business.

### **Intellectual property claims against us could be costly and could result in the loss of significant rights.**

From time to time, we receive letters from third parties alleging that we are infringing their intellectual property. Regardless of their merit, we are forced to devote time and resources to respond to these letters. In addition, if any of these third parties or others were to sue us, our business could be harmed because intellectual property litigation may:

be time-consuming and expensive;

divert management's attention and resources away from our business;

cause delays in product delivery and new service introduction;

cause the cancellation of new products or services; or

require us to pay significant royalties and/or licensing fees.

*The emerging enhanced-television industry is highly litigious, particularly in the area of on-screen program guides.* Additionally, many patents covering interactive television technologies have been granted but have not been commercialized. For example, we are aware of multiple patents for pausing live television. A number of companies in the enhanced-television industry earn substantial profits from technology licensing, and the introduction of new technologies such as ours is likely to provoke lawsuits from such companies. A successful claim of infringement against us, our inability to obtain an acceptable license from the holder of the patent or other right, or our inability to design around an asserted patent or other right could cause our manufacturers to cease manufacturing DVRs that enable the TiVo service, our retailers to stop selling the product or us to cease providing our service, or all of the above, which would eliminate our ability to generate revenues.

*Under our agreements with many of our manufacturing and licensing partners, we are obligated to indemnify them in the event that our technology infringes upon the intellectual property rights of third parties.* Due to these indemnity obligations, we could be forced to incur material expenses if our manufacturing and licensing partners are sued. If they were to lose the lawsuit, our business could be harmed. In addition, because the products sold by our manufacturing and licensing partners often involve the use of other persons' technology, this increases our exposure to litigation in circumstances where there is a claim of infringement asserted against the product in question, even if the claim does not pertain to our technology.

For example, on September 27, 2005, we received a notification and request for indemnification from DIRECTV concerning a complaint served on DIRECTV by Forgent Networks, Inc. alleging infringement of U.S. Patent No. 6,285,746 (the "746 Patent"). On September 30, 2005, we responded that we did not believe the matter warranted our indemnification given that there was no indication that Forgent's infringement allegations concerned technology provided by us to



## **Table of Contents**

DIRECTV. The case is currently scheduled for trial in May 2007. If DIRECTV is found to have infringed the 746 Patent and Forgent is awarded damages for such infringement, and it is determined that we are required to indemnify DIRECTV for all or a portion of such damages, our business could be harmed.

*Pending intellectual property litigations.* We are subject to a number of pending intellectual property litigations. We intend to defend these actions vigorously; however we could be forced to incur material expenses in connection with these lawsuits and/or as a result of our indemnification obligations and, in the event there is an adverse outcome in any of these cases, our business could be harmed. For more information on our pending intellectual property litigations, please see our discussion under Item 3. Legal Proceedings.

**We have filed a patent infringement lawsuit against EchoStar Communications Corporation. We are incurring significant expenses as a result, and an adverse outcome in the lawsuit could harm our business.**

On January 5, 2004, we filed a complaint against EchoStar Communications Corporation ( ECC ) in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Texas alleging willful and deliberate infringement of U.S. Patent No. 6,233,389, entitled Multimedia Time Warping System. On January 15, 2004, we amended our complaint to add EchoStar DBS Corporation, EchoStar Technologies Corporation, and Echosphere Limited Liability Corporation as additional defendants. We allege that we are the owner of this patent and further allege that the defendants have willfully and deliberately infringed this patent by making, selling, offering to sell and/or selling digital video recording devices, digital video recording device software, and/or personal television services in the United States. On April 13, 2006, the jury rendered a verdict in our favor for the amount of approximately \$74.0 million dollars. EchoStar is currently appealing the verdict in the federal circuit. We could be forced to incur material expenses in connection with this lawsuit. For a complete description of this lawsuit, please see our discussion under Item 3. Legal Proceedings.

**Digital video recorders could be the subject of future regulation relating to copyright law or evolving industry standards and practices that could adversely impact our business.**

In the future, copyright statutes or case law could be changed to adversely impact our business by restricting the ability of consumers to temporally or spatially shift copyrighted materials for their own personal use. Our business could be harmed as a result. In addition, we are aware that some media companies may attempt to form organizations to develop standards and practices in the digital video recorder industry. These organizations or individual media companies may attempt to require companies in the digital video recorder industry to obtain copyright or other licenses. Lawsuits or other actions taken by these types of organizations or companies could make it more difficult for us to introduce new services, delay widespread consumer acceptance of our products and services, restrict our use of some television content, increase our costs, and adversely affect our business.

**A significant part of our installed subscription base results from our relationship with DIRECTV which we expect to decrease in the future due to DIRECTV's support of a competing DVR by NDS.**

DIRECTV no longer has the right to manufacture and distribute TiVo DVRs to DIRECTV subscribers. As a result of this and DIRECTV's support of a competing DVR by NDS we expect the number of our DIRECTV with TiVo subscriptions to decrease in the future. As a consequence of the loss of these future high margin revenues from these DIRECTV with TiVo service subscriptions, our business may be harmed.

**It may be difficult for us or investors to evaluate trends and other factors that affect our business due to the relatively new and highly competitive nature of the DVR services product category.**

DVR services are a relatively new and highly competitive product category and it may be difficult to predict the future growth rate, if any, or size of the market, our products and services. We may be unable to accurately forecast customer behavior and recognize or respond to emerging trends, changing preferences or competitive factors facing us. As a result, we may be unable to make

## **Table of Contents**

accurate financial forecasts and adjust our spending in a timely manner to compensate for any unexpected revenue shortfall. Such inability could cause our net losses in a given quarter to be greater than expected, which could cause the price of our stock to decline. It may be difficult to predict accurately our future revenues, costs of revenues, expenses, or results of operations. In addition, any evaluation of our business must be made in light of the risks and difficulties encountered by companies offering products or services in new, rapidly evolving, and highly competitive markets.

### **We face a number of challenges in the sale and marketing of the TiVo service and products that enable the TiVo service.**

Our success depends upon the successful retail marketing of the TiVo service and related DVRs, which began in the third quarter of calendar year 1999.

*Many consumers are not aware of the benefits of our products.* DVR products and services represent a relatively new consumer electronics category. Retailers, consumers, and potential partners may perceive little or no benefit from digital video recorder products and services. We have only been providing the TiVo service since 1999. Many consumers are not aware of its benefits, and therefore may not value the TiVo service and products that enable the TiVo service. We will need to devote a substantial amount of time and resources to educate consumers and promote our products in order to increase our subscriptions. We cannot be sure that a broad base of consumers will ultimately subscribe to the TiVo service or purchase the products that enable the TiVo service.

*Consumers may not be willing to pay for our products and services.* Many of our customers already pay monthly fees for cable or satellite television. We must convince these consumers to pay an additional subscription fee to receive the TiVo service. Consumers may perceive the TiVo service and related DVR as too expensive. In order to continue to grow our subscription base, we may need to reduce our costs and lower the price of our DVR or service fees. The availability of competing services that do not require subscription fees or that are enabled by low or no cost DVRs will harm our ability to effectively attract and retain subscriptions.

*Growth in our TiVo-Owned subscriptions and related revenues could be harmed by competitive offerings by Comcast and Cox who also would be able to offer the TiVo service in the future.* Our ability to grow our TiVo-Owned subscriptions and related revenues could be harmed by competition from our licensing partners, such as Comcast and Cox, who may be able to offer TiVo-branded DVR solutions to their customers at more attractive pricing than we may be able to offer the TiVo service to our TiVo-Owned customers. Furthermore, if we are unable to differentiate the TiVo service from the TiVo-branded DVR solutions offered by our licensing partners, customers who would have otherwise chosen the TiVo service may instead choose to purchase the TiVo-branded DVR solution from our licensing partners. Additionally, to the extent that potential customers defer subscribing to the TiVo service in order to wait for announced, but not yet deployed, TiVo-branded DVR solutions from our licensing partners, such as Comcast and Cox, the growth of our TiVo-Owned subscriptions could be reduced. If the growth in our TiVo-Owned subscriptions is reduced, our business could be harmed.

*We compete with other consumer electronics products and home entertainment services for consumer spending.* DVRs and the TiVo service compete in markets that are crowded with other consumer electronics products and home entertainment services. The competition for consumer spending is intense, and many consumers on limited budgets may choose other products and services over ours. DVRs compete for consumer spending with products such as DVD players, satellite television systems, personal computers, and video game consoles. The TiVo service competes with home entertainment services such as cable and satellite television, movie rentals, pay-per-view, video on demand, and mail-order DVD services. See also We face intense competition from a number of sources, which may impair our revenues, increase our subscription acquisition cost, and hinder our ability to generate new subscriptions.

*Many of these products or services have established markets, broad user bases, and proven consumer acceptance.* In addition, many of the manufacturers and distributors of these competing devices and services have substantially greater brand recognition, market presence, distribution channels, advertising and marketing budgets and promotional, and other strategic partners. Faced with this competition, we may be unable to effectively differentiate our DVRs and the TiVo service from other consumer electronics devices or entertainment services.

## **Table of Contents**

*We compete with digital cable, satellite, and telecommunications DVRs.* Cable, satellite, and telecommunications service providers are accelerating deployment of integrated cable and satellite receivers with DVRs that bundle DVR services with other digital services and do not require their customers to purchase hardware. If we are not able to enter into agreements with these service providers to embed the TiVo service into their offerings, our ability to attract their subscribers to the TiVo service would be limited and our business, financial condition and results of operations could be harmed.

*It is expensive to establish a strong brand.* We believe that establishing and strengthening the TiVo brand is critical to achieving widespread acceptance of our products and services and to establishing key strategic relationships. The importance of brand recognition will increase as current and potential competitors enter the digital video recorder market with competing products and services. Our ability to promote and position our brand depends largely on the success of our marketing efforts and our ability to provide high quality services and customer support. These activities are expensive and we may not generate a corresponding increase in subscriptions or revenues to justify these costs. If we fail to establish and maintain our brand, or if our brand value is damaged or diluted, we may be unable to attract subscriptions and effectively compete in the digital video recorder market.

*We rely on our retail customers and consumer electronics manufacturers to market and distribute our products and services.* In addition to our own efforts, our retail customers and consumer electronics manufacturers distribute DVRs that enable the TiVo service. We rely on their sales forces, marketing budgets and brand images to promote and support DVRs and the TiVo service. We expect to continue to rely on our relationships with these companies to promote and support DVRs and other devices that enable the TiVo service. The loss of one or more of these companies could require us to undertake more of these activities on our own. As a result, we would spend significant resources to support the TiVo service and DVRs and other devices that enable the TiVo service. The failure of one or more of these companies to provide anticipated marketing support will require us to divert more of our limited resources to marketing the TiVo service. If we are unable to provide adequate marketing support for DVRs and the TiVo service, our ability to attract subscriptions to the TiVo service will be limited.

**If we are unable to create or maintain multiple revenue streams, we may not be able to cover our expenses and this could cause our revenues to suffer.**

*Our long-term success depends on our ability to generate revenues from multiple revenue streams.* Our long-term success will depend on securing additional revenue streams such as:

licensing;

advertising;

audience research measurement;

revenues from programmers; and

electronic commerce.

In order to derive substantial revenues from these activities, we will need to attract and retain a large and growing base of subscriptions to the TiVo service. We also will need to work closely with television advertisers, cable, satellite, and telecommunications network operators, electronic commerce companies, and consumer electronics manufacturers to develop products and services in these areas. We may not be able to work effectively with these parties to develop products that generate revenues that are sufficient to justify their costs. We also may be unable to work with, or to continue working with, these parties to distribute video and collect and distribute data or other information to provide these product or services. In addition, we are currently obligated to share a portion of these revenues with several of our strategic partners. Any inability to attract and retain a large and growing group of subscriptions or inability to attract new strategic partners or maintain and extend our relationships with our current strategic partners could seriously harm our ability to support new services and develop new revenue streams.



## **Table of Contents**

### **We face risks in connection with our licensing and marketing agreements with Comcast and Cox for the development of a TiVo-branded DVR software solution and advertising management system for deployment to Comcast and Cox customers.**

*We may never develop the licensed TiVo-branded DVR software solution and/or advertising management system.* Pursuant to our agreement with Comcast, development and deployment of the TiVo service software solution is targeted to occur by June 30, 2007 or such later date as the parties may agree. Development and deployment of the TiVo advertising management system is targeted to begin after the second anniversary of this agreement, by February 15, 2008, unless the parties agree to a later date. Similarly, there are separate deadlines associated with our development and deployment of the TiVo service software solution and advertising management system in our agreement with Cox. We could be subject to certain consequences, including, but not limited to, termination of these agreements in the event development of the TiVo service software solution and the TiVo advertising management system are not completed by the agreed upon deadlines. Our ability to develop and enable deployment by Comcast and Cox of the TiVo service software solution and advertising management system by the agreed upon deadlines could be delayed or prevented by technological problems or a lack of available resources to meet our obligations under the agreement. In the event we fail to deliver either the TiVo service software solution and/or advertising management system to Comcast or Cox by the agreed upon deadlines, our agreements with Comcast and/or Cox could be terminated and our business could be harmed.

*We may not be successful in our agreements with Comcast and Cox.* Our ability to benefit from our agreements with Comcast and Cox are dependent upon the mass-deployment and adoption of the TiVo service software solution by Comcast and Cox customers. Additionally, our ability to benefit from our agreements with Comcast and Cox are dependent upon our ability to successfully sell advertising to third parties. Furthermore, Comcast and Cox each have the right to receive certain most favored terms from us such that if we were to license similar products and services to other parties at more attractive terms than what Comcast or Cox receive under their respective agreements with us, they may be entitled to receive the new more favorable terms. Additionally, Comcast and Cox each have the right to terminate its agreement with us in the event we are subject to certain specified change of control transactions involving companies specified in their respective agreements. In the event any of these events occurred, we would have difficulty generating revenues under these agreements and our business could be harmed.

### **If we are unable to introduce new products or services, or if our new products and services are unsuccessful, the growth in our subscription base and revenues may suffer.**

To attract and retain subscriptions and generate revenues, we must continue to maintain and add to our functionality and content and introduce products and services which embody new technologies and, in some instances, new industry standards. This challenge will require hardware and software improvements, as well as maintaining and adding new collaborations with programmers, advertisers, network operators, hardware manufacturers, and other strategic partners. These activities require significant time and resources and may require us to develop and promote new ways of generating revenue with established companies in the television industry. These companies include television advertisers, cable and satellite network operators, electronic commerce companies, and consumer electronics manufacturers. In each of these examples, a small number of large companies dominate a major portion of the market and may be reluctant to work with us to develop new products and services for digital video recorders as well as maintain our current functionality. If we are unable to maintain and further develop and improve the TiVo service or maintain and expand our operations in a cost-effective or timely manner, our ability to attract and retain customers and generate revenue will suffer.

### **We face risks in the provision of an entertainment offering involving the distribution of digital content.**

## **Table of Contents**

On March 7, 2007, we launched a joint entertainment offering with the Amazon Unbox service for the distribution of digital content directly to broadband-connected TiVo DVRs. Our offering with Amazon Unbox involves no long-term commitments. We face competitive, technological, and financial risks in our on-going provision of an entertainment offering involving the distribution of digital content with Amazon and others in the future, including availability of premium content and speed and quality of the delivery of such content to TiVo DVRs. If we are unable to provide a competitive entertainment offering with Amazon Unbox, on our own, or with another third party, the attractiveness of the TiVo service to new subscribers could be harmed and our business could be adversely affected.

**Our ability to retain our current customers may decrease in the future which could increase our TiVo-Owned subscription monthly churn rate and could cause our revenues to suffer.**

We believe factors such as increased competition in the DVR marketplace, changing television technologies such as the increasing penetration of high definition and the use of switched technology to deliver encrypted digital television signals, increased price sensitivity in the consumer base, any deterioration in the quality of our service, and product lifetime subscriptions no longer using our service may cause our TiVo-Owned subscription monthly churn rate to increase. If we are unable to retain our subscriptions by limiting the factors that we believe increase subscription churn, our ability to grow our subscription base could suffer and our revenues could be harmed.

**If we fail to manage the growth and complexity of our activities, it could disrupt our business and impair our ability to generate revenues.**

The growth in our subscription base and increasing complexity of our sources of other revenue have placed, and will continue to place, a significant strain on our management, operational and financial resources and systems. Specific risks we face as our business expands include:

*Any inability of our systems to accommodate our expected subscription growth, or any inability of our TiVo.com website to handle expected customer traffic, may cause service interruptions or delay our introduction of new services and limit our ability to sell the TiVo service and TiVo-enabled DVRs.* We internally developed many of the systems we use to provide the TiVo service and perform other processing functions. The ability of these systems to scale as we add new subscriptions is unproven. We must continually improve these systems to accommodate subscription growth and to add features and functionality to the TiVo service. Our inability to add software and hardware or to upgrade our technology, systems or network infrastructure could adversely affect our business, cause service interruptions or delay the introduction of new services. Our inability to manage customer traffic and sales volume through our TiVo.com website could limit our ability to sell the TiVo service and TiVo-enabled DVRs in the future. If our website were to become unavailable for a significant amount of time, our ability to provide certain features of the TiVo service and our ability to service customers and sell the TiVo service and TiVo-enabled DVRs would be harmed.

*We will need to provide acceptable customer support, and any inability to do so would harm our brand and ability to retain current subscriptions and generate new subscriptions.* Our ability to increase sales, retain current and future subscriptions and strengthen our brand will depend in part upon the quality of our customer support operations. Some customers require significant support when installing the DVR and becoming acquainted with the features and functionality of the TiVo service. We have limited experience with widespread deployment of our products and services to a diverse customer base, and we may not have adequate personnel to provide the levels of support that our customers require. In addition, we have entered into agreements with third parties to provide this support and will rely on them for a substantial portion of our customer support functions. Our failure to provide adequate customer support for the TiVo service and DVR will damage our reputation in the digital video recorder and consumer electronics marketplace and strain our relationships with customers and consumer electronics manufacturers. This could prevent us from gaining new or retaining existing subscriptions and could cause harm to our reputation and brand.

*We will need to improve our operational and financial systems to support our expected growth, increasingly complex business arrangements, and rules governing revenue and expense*

## **Table of Contents**

*recognition and any inability to do so will adversely affect our billing and reporting.* We have increasingly complex business arrangements, and the rules which govern revenue and expense recognition in our business are increasingly complex as well. To manage the expected growth of our operations and increasing complexity, we will need to improve our operational and financial systems, procedures and controls and continue to increase systems automation to reduce reliance on manual operations. Any inability to do so will affect our billing and reporting. Our current and planned systems, procedures and controls may not be adequate to support our complex arrangements and the rules governing revenue and expense recognition for our future operations and expected growth. Delays or problems associated with any improvement or expansion of our operational and financial systems and controls could adversely affect our relationships with our customers; cause harm to our reputation and brand; and could also result in errors in our financial and other reporting.

**If we fail to adequately manage our increasingly complex licensing, development and engineering services agreements, we could be subjected to unexpected costs and incur losses which could adversely affect our business.**

We engage in licensing, development, and engineering services agreements with our customers, such as Comcast, Cox, and DIRECTV, for example. These types of contracts are typically long-term and complex. The engineering services we agree to provide may be essential to the functionality of the licensed software or such software may involve significant customization and modification. We believe we are able to make reasonably dependable cost estimates based on historical experience and various other assumptions. These estimates are assessed continually during the term of the contract and revisions are reflected when the conditions become known. Using different cost estimates related to engineering services may produce materially different results for related expenses and revenues. A favorable change in estimates in a period could result in additional revenue and profit, and an unfavorable change in estimates could result in a reduction of revenue and profit or the recording of a loss that would be borne solely by us. Any inability to properly manage, estimate, and perform these development and engineering services for our customers could cause us to incur unexpected losses and reduce or even eliminate any profit from these arrangements, and in such a case our business would be harmed.

**We must manage product transitions successfully in order to remain competitive.**

The introduction of a new product or product line is a complex task, involving significant expenditures in research and development, training, promotion and sales channel development, and management of existing product inventories to reduce the cost associated with returns and slow moving inventory. As new products are introduced, we intend to monitor closely the inventory of products to be replaced, and to phase out their manufacture in a controlled manner. However, we cannot assure you that we will be able to execute product transitions in this manner or that product transitions will be executed without harming our operating results. Failure to develop products with required features and performance levels or any delay in bringing a new product to market could significantly reduce our revenues and harm our competitive position.

**The product lifetime subscriptions to the TiVo service that we currently are obligated to service commit us to providing services for an indefinite period. The revenue we generate from these subscriptions may be insufficient to cover future costs and will negatively impact our TiVo-Owned Average Revenue per Subscription.**

In the past, we offered a product lifetime subscription option to the TiVo service that committed us to provide TiVo service for as long as the DVR is in service. We received the product lifetime subscription fee for the TiVo service in advance and amortize it as subscription revenue over four years, which is our estimate of the service life of the DVR. If these product lifetime subscriptions use the DVR for longer than anticipated, we will incur costs such as telecommunications and customer support costs without a corresponding subscription revenue stream and therefore will be required to fund ongoing costs of service from other sources. Additionally, if these product lifetime subscriptions use the DVR for longer than the period in which we recognize revenue, our average revenues per subscription (ARPU) for our TiVo-Owned subscriptions will be negatively impacted as we continue to count these customers as subscriptions without corresponding subscription revenue thus lowering our average revenues across our TiVo-Owned subscription base. As of January 31, 2007, we had approximately 165,000 product lifetime subscriptions that had exceeded the four-year period we use to recognize product lifetime subscription revenues and had made contact to the TiVo service within the prior six-month period. This represents approximately 23% of our cumulative lifetime subscriptions as compared to 13% in fiscal year ended January 31, 2005. If the useful life of the recorder were shorter or longer than four-years, we would recognize revenues earlier or later. We will continue to monitor the useful life of a TiVo-enabled DVR and the impact of higher churn, increased competition, and compatibility of our existing TiVo units with high-definition programming. Further analysis will allow us to determine if our useful life is shorter or longer than four-years, in which case we may revise the estimated life and we would recognize revenues from this source over a shorter or longer period.

**We share a substantial portion of the revenue we generate from subscription fees with some of our retail customers and consumer electronics companies. We may be unable to generate enough revenue to cover these obligations.**

In some of our agreements, we have agreed to share a substantial portion of our subscription and other fees with some of our retail customers and consumer electronics manufacturing companies in exchange for manufacturing, distribution and marketing support, and discounts on key

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

components for DVRs. These agreements require us to share substantial portions of the subscription and other fees attributable to the same subscription with multiple companies. These agreements also require us to share a portion of our subscription fees whether or not we increase or decrease the price of the TiVo service. If we change our subscription fees in response to competitive or other market factors, our operating results would be adversely affected. Our decision to share subscription revenues is based on our expectation that these relationships will help us obtain subscriptions, broaden market acceptance of digital video recorders, and increase our future revenues. If these expectations are not met, we may be unable to generate sufficient revenue to cover our expenses and obligations.

---

## **Table of Contents**

### **Bundled pricing with varying commitment terms for the TiVo service may involve increased acquisition costs and subject us to increased customer credit risk.**

We have elected to offer the TiVo service at various price points bundled with a TiVo-enabled DVR as part of the subscription fee. The bundled TiVo service and DVR offerings may involve higher acquisition costs including, for example, the offering of a no cost or significantly discounted DVR in exchange for a commitment to pay a specified subscription price for a minimum period of time from one to three years. As a result of these bundled offers, we may be subject to increased amounts of customer credit risk in the future. If we incur these increased subscription acquisition costs without a corresponding return in expected future revenues, our business could be harmed.

### **We engage in various advertising, marketing, and other promotions that are regulated by state and federal laws and regulations and any violation of these laws and regulations could harm our business.**

We engage in various advertising, marketing, and other promotional activities, such as offering rebates and gift subscriptions to consumers, which are subject to state and federal laws and regulations. An evolving network of state and federal laws is increasingly regulating these promotional activities. If we were to violate any of these laws or regulations governing these promotional activities, we could be subject to suit, penalties, and/or negative publicity in which case our business could be harmed.

### **The nature of some of our business relationships may restrict our ability to operate freely in the future.**

From time to time, we have engaged and may engage in the future in discussions with other parties concerning business relationships, which have and may include equity investments by such parties in our company. While we believe that such business relationships have historically enhanced our ability to finance and develop our business model, the terms and conditions of such business relationships may place some restrictions on the operation of our business in the future.

### **Entertainment companies or video distributors may claim that some of the features of our DVRs violate copyright or trademark laws, which could force us to incur significant costs in defending such actions and affect our ability to market the TiVo service and the products that enable the TiVo service.**

Although we have not been the subject of such actions to date, a past competitor's digital video recorders were the subject of several copyright infringement lawsuits by a number of major entertainment companies, including the major television networks. These lawsuits alleged that the competitor's digital video recorders violate copyright laws by allowing users to skip commercials, delete recordings only when instructed and use the Internet to send recorded materials to other users. TiVo-enabled DVRs have some similar features, including the ability to fast-forward through commercials, the ability to delete recordings only when instructed and the ability to transfer recordings from a TiVo-enabled DVR to a PC and/or portable media devices via TiVoToGo transfers. Based on market or consumer pressures, we may decide in the future to add additional features similar to those of our competitors or that may otherwise be objectionable to entertainment companies. If similar actions are filed against us based on current or future features of our DVRs, entertainment companies may seek injunctions to prevent us from including these features and/or damages. Such litigation can be costly and may divert the efforts of our management. Furthermore, if we were ordered to remove features from our DVRs, we may experience increased difficulty in marketing the TiVo service and related TiVo-enabled DVRs and may suffer reduced revenues as a result.

### **Entertainment companies, networks, or video distributors may claim that our advertising product or features violate copyright or trademark laws or otherwise unfairly compete with them, which could result in the blocking, stripping or failure to carry out our advertising products or features or force us to incur significant costs in defending such actions and affect our ability to generate advertising revenues.**

---

## **Table of Contents**

Entertainment companies, networks, or video distributors may claim that our advertising products or features violate copyright or trademark laws, or otherwise unfairly compete with them, by being placed within, adjacent to, or on top of, existing video programming or advertising. Entertainment companies or video distributors may seek injunctions to prevent us from offering these product or features, seek damages and/or take other measures, such as blocking, stripping or refusing carriage to prevent us from selling or distributing our advertising products. If we were unable to sell or distribute our advertising products or features on our DVRs, we may suffer reduced revenues as a result.

### **Our success depends on our ability to secure and protect our patents, trademarks, and other proprietary rights.**

Our success and ability to compete are substantially dependent upon our internally developed technology. We rely on patent, trademark and copyright law, trade secret protection and confidentiality or license agreements with our employees, customers, partners and others to protect our intellectual property rights. However, the steps we take to protect our proprietary rights may be inadequate. We have filed patent applications and provisional patent applications covering substantially all of the technology used to deliver the TiVo service and its features and functionality. To date, several of these patents have been granted, but we cannot assure you that any additional patents will ever be granted, that any issued patents will protect our intellectual property or that third parties will not challenge any issued patents. In addition, other parties may independently develop similar or competing technologies designed around any patents that may be issued to us. Our failure to secure and protect our proprietary rights could have a material adverse effect on our business.

### **We could be prevented from selling or developing our TiVo software if the GNU General Public License governing the GNU/Linux operating system and Linux kernel and similar licenses under which our product is developed and licensed is not enforceable or changed substantially.**

Our TiVo software includes parts of the Linux kernel and the GNU/Linux operating system. The Linux kernel and the GNU/Linux operating system have been developed and licensed under the GNU General Public License, version 2 and similar open source licenses. These licenses state that any program licensed under them may be liberally copied, modified, and distributed. The GNU General Public license is a subject of litigation in the case of The SCO Group, Inc. v. International Business Machines Corp., pending in the United States District Court for the District of Utah. SCO Group, Inc., or SCO, has publicly alleged that certain versions of the Linux kernel contain unauthorized UNIX code or derivative works of UNIX code. Uncertainty concerning SCO's allegations, regardless of their merit, could adversely affect our manufacturing and other customer and supplier relationships. It is possible that a court would hold these open source licenses to be unenforceable in that litigation or that someone could assert a claim for proprietary rights in our TiVo software that runs on a GNU/Linux-based operating system. Any ruling by a court that these licenses are not enforceable, or that GNU/Linux-based operating systems, or significant portions of them, may not be liberally copied, modified or distributed, would have the effect of preventing us from selling or developing our TiVo software and would adversely affect our business.

In addition, the GNU Public License is subject to occasional revision. A proposal for changing the license from its current form (GPLv2) into a newer, more restrictive version called GPLv3 has been proposed and is currently undergoing community review. If the currently proposed version of GPLv3 is widely adopted, we may be unable to incorporate future enhancements to the GNU/Linux operating system into our software, which could adversely affect our business.

### **If there is an adverse outcome in the class action litigation that has been filed against us, our business may be harmed.**

We and certain of our officers and directors were named as defendants in a consolidated securities class action lawsuit filed in the U.S. District Court for the Southern District of New York. On June 26, 2003, the plaintiffs announced a proposed settlement with the Company and the other

## **Table of Contents**

issuer defendants. The proposed settlement provides that the plaintiffs will be guaranteed \$1.0 billion dollars in recoveries by the insurers of the Company and other issuer defendants. Accordingly, any direct financial impact of the proposed settlement is expected to be borne by the Company's insurers in accordance with the proposed settlement. In the event that the Court does not approve the final settlement, we believe we have meritorious defenses and intend to defend this action vigorously; however, we could be forced to incur material expenses in the litigation, and in the event there is an adverse outcome, our business could be harmed. For more information on this litigation please see our discussion under Item 3. Legal Proceedings.

**Legislation, laws or regulations that govern the consumer electronics and television industry, the delivery of programming, access to television signals, and the collection of viewing information from subscriptions could expose us to legal action if we fail to comply and could adversely impact and/or could require us to change our business.**

The delivery of television programming, access to television signals by consumer electronics devices, and the collection of viewing information from subscriptions via the TiVo service and a DVR represent a relatively new category in the television and home entertainment industries. As such, it is difficult to predict what laws or regulations will govern our business. Changes in the regulatory climate, the enactment of new legislation, or the expansion, contraction, enforcement or interpretation of existing laws or regulations could expose us to additional costs and expenses and could adversely impact or require changes to our business. For example, legislation regarding customer privacy or copyright could be enacted or expanded to apply to the TiVo service, which could adversely affect our business. Laws or regulations could be interpreted to prevent or limit access to some or all television signals by certain consumer electronics devices, or impose limits on the number of copies, the ability to transfer or move copies, or the length of time a consumer may retain copies of some or all types of television programming. New or existing copyright laws could be applied to restrict the capture of television programming, which would adversely affect our business. It is unknown whether existing laws and regulations will apply to the digital video recorder market. Therefore, it is difficult to anticipate the impact of current or future laws and regulations on our business. We may have significant expenses associated with staying apprised of local, state, federal, and international legislation and regulation of our business and in presenting TiVo's positions on proposed laws and regulations.

The Federal Communications Commission, or FCC, has broad jurisdiction over the telecommunications and cable industries. The FCC could promulgate new regulations, or interpret existing regulations in a manner that would cause us to incur significant compliance costs or force us to alter or eliminate certain features or functionality of the TiVo products or services which may adversely affect our business. For example, FCC could determine that certain of our products fail to comply with regulations concerning matters such as electrical interference, copy protection, digital tuners, or display of television programming based on rating systems. The FCC could also impose limits on the number of copies, the ability to transfer or move copies, the length of time a consumer may retain copies, or the ability to access some or all types of television programming.

**If there is increased use of switched technologies to transmit television programs by cable operators (also known as switched digital) in the future, the desirability and competitiveness of our current products could be reduced in which case our business would be harmed.**

We rely on conditional access security cards supplied by cable operators called CableCARDs for certain types of our DVRs to receive encrypted digital television signals without a cable operator supplied set-top box. These DVRs presently are limited to using CableCARDs to access digital cable, High Definition, and premium cable channels like HBO that are delivered in a linear fashion where all programs are broadcast to all subscribers all the time. Certain cable operators are beginning to test and deploy switched technologies to transmit television programs in a non-linear fashion (switched digital) only to subscribers who request to watch a particular program. Increased use of switched technologies and the continued inability of our products to receive switched cable programming may reduce the desirability and competitiveness of our products and services and adversely affect sales of our TiVo-Owned subscriptions in which case our business would be harmed.

**Our Business could be adversely impacted in the event of a natural disaster.**

## **Table of Contents**

Our corporate headquarters is located in Alviso, California which is where the overwhelming majority of our employees work. Our primary servers are located nearby in San Jose, California. Alviso and San Jose lay near the San Andreas Fault, a major source of earthquake activity in California. In the event of an earthquake or similar natural disaster, our ability to continue operations could be adversely affected and our business could be harmed.

### **Legislation, laws or regulations relating to environmental issues, employment matters, and unclaimed property may adversely impact our business in the future.**

It is possible that future proposed environmental regulations on consumer electronic devices, such as DVRs and set-top boxes, may regulate and increase the production, manufacture, use, and disposal costs incurred by us and our customers. For example future energy regulations could potentially make it more costly for us to design, manufacture, and sell our DVRs to our customers thus harming the growth of our business.

Additionally, as our business grows and we expand our employed and contracted work force, employment laws and regulations will have an increasing impact on our ability to manage and grow our work-force. Regulations and laws relating to the status of contractors, classification and related benefits for exempt and non-exempt employees all may adversely impact our business if we are unable to properly manage and comply with federal, state, and local laws.

Furthermore, as part of our regular business activities now, and in the past, we engage in the issuance of gift subscriptions and the marketing of rebate offers related to the sale of our products and services. It is possible that money received by us for the sale of gift subscriptions or related to our past rebates offers could be subject to state and federal escheat, or unclaimed property, laws in the future. If this were the case, our business could be adversely impacted.

### **If we fail to comply with the laws and regulations relating to the collection of sales tax and payment of income taxes in the various States in which we do business, we could be exposed to unexpected costs, expenses, penalties, and fees as a result of our noncompliance in which case our business could be harmed.**

As our business grows and expands, we have started to do business in an increasing number of States nationally. By engaging in business activities in these States, we become subject to their various laws and regulations, including requirements to collect sales tax from our sales within those States and the payment of income taxes on revenue generated from activities in those States. The laws and regulations governing the collection of sales tax and payment of income taxes are numerous, complex, and vary between States. If we fail to comply with these laws and regulations requiring the collection of sales tax and payment of income taxes in one or more States where we do business, we could be subject to significant costs, expenses, penalties, and fees in which case our business could be harmed.

### **Recently enacted and proposed changes in securities laws and regulations has increased and will continue to increase our costs and may affect our ability to be in compliance with such new corporate governance provisions in the future.**

The existing federal securities laws and regulations impose complex and continually changing regulatory requirements on our operations and reporting. With the enactment of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 in July 2002, a significant number of new corporate governance requirements have been adopted. These requirements impose comprehensive reporting and disclosure requirements, set stricter independence and financial expertise standards for audit committee members, and impose increased civil and criminal penalties for companies, their chief executive officers, chief financial officers and directors for securities law violations. These developments have increased and will continue to increase our legal compliance costs, increase the difficulty and expense in obtaining director and officer liability insurance, and make it harder for us to attract and retain qualified members of our board of directors and/or qualified executive officers. Such developments could harm our results of operations and divert management's attention from business operations.

### **Our business could be adversely impacted if we have deficiencies in our disclosure controls and procedures or internal control over financial reporting or credit card security and protection measures.**

The design and effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures and internal control over financial reporting may not prevent all errors, misstatements or misrepresentations. While management continues to review the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures and internal control over financial reporting, we can not assure you that our disclosure controls and procedures and internal control over financial reporting will be effective in accomplishing all control objectives all of the time. Deficiencies, particularly a material weakness in internal control over financial reporting, which may occur in the future could result in misstatements of our results of operations, restatements of our financial statements, a decline in our stock price, the delisting of our common stock from the Nasdaq Global Market, or otherwise materially adversely affect our business, reputation, results of operation, financial condition or liquidity.



## **Table of Contents**

**The nature of our business requires the application of complex revenue and expense recognition rules and the current legislative and regulatory environment affecting U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principals (GAAP) is uncertain and volatile, and significant changes in current principles could affect our financial statements going forward.**

The accounting rules and regulations that we must comply with are complex and continually changing. Recent actions and public comments from the Securities Exchange Commission have focused on the integrity of financial reporting generally. In addition, many companies' accounting policies are being subject to heightened scrutiny by regulators and the public. While we believe that our financial statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, we cannot predict the impact of future changes to accounting principles or our accounting policies on our financial statements going forward. In addition, were we to change our critical accounting estimates, including the timing of recognition of revenue from our product lifetime subscriptions, our results of operations could be significantly impacted.

**We will need to remain compliant with the Payment Card Industry requirements for security and protection of customer credit card information and an inability to do so will adversely affect our business.**

As a merchant who processes credit card payments from its customers, we are required to comply with the payment card industry requirements imposed on us for the protection and security of our customers' credit card information. If we are unable to successfully remain compliant with the payment card industry requirements imposed on us as a credit card merchant, our business could be harmed because we could be prevented in the future from transacting customer subscription payments by means of a credit card.

**We need to safeguard the security and privacy of our subscribers' confidential data, and any inability to do so may harm our reputation and brand and expose us to legal action.**

*The DVR collects and stores viewer preferences and other data that many of our customers consider confidential.* Any compromise or breach of the encryption and other security measures that we use to protect this data could harm our reputation and expose us to potential liability. Advances in computer capabilities, new discoveries in the field of cryptography, or other events or developments could compromise or breach the systems we use to protect our subscribers' confidential information. We may be required to make significant expenditures to protect against security breaches or to remedy problems caused by any breaches.

*Uncertainty in the marketplace regarding the use of data from subscriptions could reduce demand for the TiVo service and result in increased expenses.* Consumers may be concerned about the use of viewing information gathered by the TiVo service and the DVR. Currently, we gather anonymous information about our customers' viewing choices while using the TiVo service, unless a customer affirmatively consents to the collection of personally identifiable viewing information. This anonymous viewing information does not identify the individual customer. Privacy concerns, however, could create uncertainty in the marketplace for digital video recording and for our products and services. Changes in our privacy policy could reduce demand for the TiVo service, increase the cost of doing business as a result of litigation costs or increased service delivery costs, or otherwise harm our reputation and business.

**We have limited experience in overseeing manufacturing processes, managing inventory, or engaging in the outsourcing of engineering work and failure to do so effectively may result in supply imbalances or product recalls that could harm our business or the loss of valuable intellectual property that could harm our business.**

We have contracted for the manufacture of certain TiVo-enabled DVRs with a contract manufacturer. We sell these units to retailers and distributors, as well as through our own online sales efforts. As part of this effort, we expect to maintain some finished goods inventory of the units throughout the year. Overseeing manufacturing processes and managing inventory are outside of our core business and our experience in these areas is limited. If we fail to effectively oversee the manufacturing process and manage inventory, we may suffer from insufficient inventory to meet consumer demand or excess inventory. Ineffective oversight of the manufacturing process could also

## Table of Contents

result in product recalls. We record adjustments to our inventory of finished products and materials on-hand, when appropriate, to reflect inventory at lower of cost or market and to account for product or materials which is not forecasted to be used in future production. We also record accruals for charges that represent Management's estimate of our exposure to the contract manufacturer for excess non-cancelable purchase commitments. As of January 31, 2007, we had impaired \$2.0 million in inventory and reserved approximately \$500,000 for excess non-cancelable purchase commitments. In the future, we may be required to record additional write-downs of finished products and materials on-hand and/or additional charges for excess purchase commitments as a result of future changes in our sales forecasts.

We have from time-to-time engaged in the outsourcing of engineering work related to the design, development, and manufacturing of our products. We have and expect to in the future work with companies located in jurisdictions outside of the United States, including, but not limited to, China, South Korea, India, Ukraine, and Mexico. We have limited experience in the outsourcing of engineering, manufacturing and other work to third parties located internationally that operate under different laws and regulations than those in the United States. If we are unable to properly manage and oversee the outsourcing of this engineering, manufacturing and other work related to our products, we could suffer the loss of valuable intellectual property, including patents, trademarks, trade secrets, and copyrights and as a result our business could be harmed.

**We have limited experience in providing service and operations internationally that are subject to different laws, regulations, and requirements than those in the United States and our inability to perform or comply with such laws, regulations, and requirements could harm our reputation, brand, and have a negative impact on revenues.**

We have provided and expect to continue to provide TiVo service in jurisdictions outside of the United States, including the United Kingdom and in the future, Mexico. We have limited experience in international operations. If we are unable to properly manage our international operations or comply with international laws, regulations, and requirements, we could suffer damage to our reputation, brand, and revenues and as a result our business could be harmed.

**Product defects, system failures or interruptions to the TiVo service may have a negative impact on our revenues, damage our reputation and decrease our ability to attract new customers.**

Our ability to provide uninterrupted service and high quality customer support depends on the efficient and uninterrupted operation of our computer and communications systems. Our computer hardware and other operating systems for the TiVo service are vulnerable to damage or interruption from earthquakes, floods, fires, power loss, telecommunication failures and similar events. They are also subject to break-ins, sabotage, intentional acts of vandalism and similar misconduct. These types of interruptions in the TiVo service may reduce our revenues and profits. We currently house the server hardware that delivers the TiVo service at only one location and continue to explore the benefits of establishing a backup facility. Our business also will be harmed if consumers believe our service is unreliable. In addition to placing increased burdens on our engineering staff, service outages will create a flood of customer questions and complaints that must be responded to by our customer support personnel. Any frequent or persistent system failures could irreparably damage our reputation and brand and possibly trigger requests for refunds on subscriptions fees and hardware purchases and possible consumer litigation.

*We have detected in the past and may continue to detect errors and product defects in the future.* These problems can affect system uptime and result in significant warranty and repair problems, which could cause customer service and customer relations problems. Correcting errors in our software or fixing defects in our products requires significant time and resources, which could delay product releases and affect market acceptance of the TiVo service. Any delivery by us of products or upgrades with undetected material product defects or software errors could harm our credibility and market acceptance of the DVRs and the TiVo service. In addition, defective products could cause a risk of injury that may subject us to litigation or cause us to have to undertake a product recall. For example, we previously became aware of occasions where a part came loose from the remote control device that comes with the DVRs that enable the TiVo service, including occurrences where a young child gagged on or ingested a part of the remote control device. While we

## **Table of Contents**

are unaware of any injuries resulting from the use of our products, we may be subject to products liability litigation in the future. Additionally, if we are required to repair or replace any of our products, we could incur significant costs, which would have a negative impact on our financial condition and results of operations.

**If we lose senior management or other key engineering personnel or are unable to replace or recruit key management and engineering personnel, we may not be able to successfully operate our business.**

Our future performance and growth will be substantially dependent on the continued services of our senior management and other key engineering personnel as well our ability to replace departed personnel and ability to recruit key management and engineering personnel in the future. The loss of any members of our senior management team or other key engineering personnel and our inability to hire additional senior management or other key engineering personnel could harm our business and results of operations. Competition to recruit and retain key management, engineering and other personnel in Silicon Valley is highly competitive. In addition, we do not have key man insurance policies for any of our key personnel which may adversely affect our ability to replace members of senior management.

**Our Certificate of Incorporation, Bylaws, Rights Agreement and Delaware law could discourage a third party from acquiring us and consequently decrease the market value of our common stock.**

In the future, we could become the subject of an unsolicited attempted takeover of our company. Although an unsolicited takeover could be in the best interests of our stockholders, certain provisions of Delaware law, our organizational documents and our Rights Agreement could be impediments to such a takeover.

We are subject to the provisions of Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, an anti-takeover law. In general, the statute prohibits a publicly held Delaware corporation from engaging in a business combination with an interested stockholder for a period of three years after the date of the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder, unless the business combination is approved in a prescribed manner. Our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation and Amended and Restated Bylaws also require that any action required or permitted to be taken by our stockholders must be effected at a duly called annual or special meeting of the stockholders and may not be effected by a consent in writing. In addition, special meetings of our stockholders may be called only by a majority of the total number of authorized directors, the chairman of the board, our chief executive officer or the holders of 50% or more of our common stock. Our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation and Amended and Restated Bylaws also provide that directors may be removed only for cause by a vote of a majority of the stockholders and that vacancies on the board of directors created either by resignation, death, disqualification, removal or by an increase in the size of the board of directors may be filled by a majority of the directors in office, although less than a quorum. Our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation also provides for a classified board of directors and specifies that the authorized number of directors may be changed only by resolution of the board of directors.

On January 9, 2001, our board of directors adopted a Rights Agreement. Our Rights Agreement was last amended on April 12, 2006. Each share of our common stock has attached to it a right to purchase one one-hundredth of a share of our Series B Junior Participating Preferred Stock at a price of \$60 per one one-hundredth of a preferred share. Subject to limited exceptions, the rights will become exercisable following the tenth day after a person or group announces the acquisition of 15% or more of our common stock, and thereby becomes an acquiring person, or announces commencement of a tender offer or exchange offer, the consummation of which would result in the ownership by the person or group of 15% or more of our common stock. In the event that a person becomes an acquiring person or if we are the surviving corporation in a merger with an acquiring person and the shares of our common stock were not changed or exchanged, the rights will thereafter become exercisable for a number of shares of our common stock equal to two times the then current purchase price of the right. On April 12, 2006, we amended the Rights Plan's definition of Acquiring Person to remove the limited carve out for America Online, Inc. and its affiliates and associates to acquire up to 30% of our common stock. The rights are not exercisable as of the date of this filing. We will be entitled to redeem the rights at \$0.01 per right at any time prior to the time that a person or group becomes an acquiring person.

## **Table of Contents**

These provisions of Delaware law, our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation and Amended and Restated Bylaws and our Rights Agreement could make it more difficult for us to be acquired by another company, even if our acquisition is in the best interests of our stockholders. Any delay or prevention of a change of control or change in management could cause the market price of our common stock to decline.

### **In the future, our revenues and operating results may fluctuate significantly, which may adversely affect the market price of our common stock.**

We expect our revenues and operating results to fluctuate significantly due to a number of factors, many of which are outside of our control. Therefore, you should not rely on period-to-period comparisons of results of operations as an indication of our future performance. It is possible that in some periods our operating results may fall below the expectations of market analysts and investors. In such event, the market price of our common stock would likely fall.

Factors that may affect our annual operating results include:

demand for TiVo-enabled DVRs and the TiVo service;

the timing and introduction of new services and features on the TiVo service;

seasonality and other consumer and advertising trends;

changes in revenue sharing arrangements with our strategic relationships;

entering into new or terminating existing strategic partnerships;

changes in our pricing policies, the pricing policies of our competitors and general pricing trends in the consumer electronics market;

timing of revenue recognition under our licensing agreements;

loss of subscriptions to the TiVo service;

recruiting and retention of key personnel; and

general economic conditions.

Because our expenses precede associated revenues, unanticipated shortfalls in revenues could adversely affect our results of operations for any given period and cause the market price of our common stock to fall.

### **Seasonal trends may cause our quarterly operating results to fluctuate and our inability to forecast these trends may adversely affect the market price of our common stock.**

Consumer electronic product sales have traditionally been much higher during the holiday shopping season than during other times of the year. Although predicting consumer demand for our products is very difficult, we have experienced that sales of DVRs and new subscriptions to the

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

TiVo service have been disproportionately high during the holiday shopping season when compared to other times of the year. If we are unable to accurately forecast and respond to consumer demand for our products, our reputation and brand will suffer and the market price of our common stock would likely fall.

We expect that a portion of our future revenues will come from targeted commercials and other forms of interactive television advertising enabled by the TiVo service. Expenditures by advertisers tend to be seasonal and cyclical, reflecting overall economic conditions as well as budgeting and buying patterns. A decline in the economic prospects of advertisers or the economy in general could alter current or prospective advertisers' spending priorities or increase the time it takes to close a sale with our advertisers, which could cause our revenues from advertisements to decline significantly in any given period.

**If we are unable to raise additional capital through the issuance of equity, debt or other financing activities on acceptable terms, our ability to effectively manage growth and build a strong brand could be harmed. We may incur debt or draw upon our line of credit to which covenants attach which could be violated if we do not meet our expectations.**

---

## **Table of Contents**

We expect that our existing capital resources will be sufficient to meet our cash requirements through the next twelve months. However, as we continue to grow our business, we may need to raise additional capital, which may not be available on acceptable terms or at all. We may also incur debt or may draw upon our line of credit which will subject us to restrictive covenants which if violated by us would cause us to incur penalties and increased expenses which could in turn harm our business. If we cannot raise necessary additional capital on acceptable terms, we may not be able to develop or enhance our products and services, take advantage of future opportunities or respond to competitive pressures or unanticipated requirements.

If additional capital is raised through the issuance of equity securities, the percentage ownership of our existing stockholders will decline, stockholders may experience dilution in net book value per share, or these equity securities may have rights, preferences or privileges senior to those of the holders of our common stock. In addition, we may be limited in our ability to raise capital through the issuance of additional equity securities by the number of authorized, but unissued and unreserved shares of our common stock available for issuance. Any debt financing, if available, may involve covenants limiting, or restricting our operations or future opportunities. For example, we may seek to leverage our existing and future revenues to raise capital for investing in future subscription growth initiatives. Such financing activities may involve the issuance of debt or other secured instruments tied to current or future revenues that may involve covenants limiting, or restricting our operations or future opportunities or may involve other risks to stockholders.

### **The large number of shares available for future sale could adversely affect the market price for our stock.**

Sales of a substantial number of shares of our common stock in the public market or the perception that such sales might occur could adversely affect the market price of our common stock. Several of our stockholders own a substantial number of our shares.

As of January 31, 2007, options to purchase a total of 18,665,974 shares were outstanding under our option and equity incentive plans, and there were 22,123,913 shares available for future grants. We have filed registration statements with respect to the shares of common stock issuable under our option and equity incentive plans.

Future sales of the shares of the common stock, or the registration for sale of such common stock, or the issuance of common stock to satisfy our current or future cash payment obligations or to acquire technology, property, or other businesses, could cause immediate dilution and adversely affect the market price of our common stock. The sale or issuance of such stock, as well as the existence of outstanding options and shares of common stock reserved for issuance under our option and equity incentive plans, also may adversely affect the terms upon which we are able to obtain additional capital through the sale of equity securities.

### **We expect to continue to experience volatility in our stock price.**

The market price of our common stock is highly volatile. Since our initial public offering in September 1999 through April 3, 2007, our common stock has closed between \$71.50 per share and \$2.55 per share, closing at \$6.45 on April 3, 2007. The market price of our common stock may be subject to significant fluctuations in response to, among other things, the factors discussed in this section and the following factors:

changes in estimates of our financial performance or changes in recommendations by securities analysts;

our failure to meet, or our ability to exceed, the expectations of securities analysts or investors;

release of new or enhanced products or introduction of new marketing initiatives by us or our competitors;

announcements by us or our competitors of the creation, developments under or termination of significant strategic relationships, joint ventures, significant contracts or acquisitions;

## **Table of Contents**

fluctuations in the market prices generally for technology and media-related stocks;

fluctuations in general economic conditions;

fluctuations in interest rates;

market conditions affecting the television and home entertainment industry and the technology sector;

fluctuations in operating results; and

additions or departures of key personnel.

The stock market has from time to time experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations, which have particularly affected the market prices for emerging companies, and which have often been unrelated to their operating performance. These broad market fluctuations may adversely affect the market price of our common stock.

### **ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS**

None

### **ITEM 2. PROPERTIES**

Our corporate headquarters, which houses our administrative, sales and marketing, customer service and product development activities, is located in Alviso, California, under a lease that expires on January 31, 2010. We believe that we may need to expand our corporate facilities to meet our office space needs in the next several years as we currently utilize approximately 95% of our total office space. Our current facilities lease obligations are subject to periodic increases and we believe that our existing facilities are well maintained and in good operating condition. The Company also has an operating lease for sales and administrative office space in New York.

### **ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS**

**Intellectual Property Litigation.** In September 1999, TiVo received letters from Time Warner, Inc. and Fox Television stating that TiVo's personal television service exploits these companies' copyrights without the necessary licenses. The Company believes that the TiVo service does not infringe on these copyrights and believes that there will not be an adverse impact as a result of these letters.

On January 5, 2004, TiVo filed a complaint against EchoStar Communications Corporation in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Texas alleging willful and deliberate infringement of U.S. Patent No. 6,233,389, entitled "Multimedia Time Warping System." On January 15, 2004, the Company amended its complaint to add EchoStar DBS Corporation, EchoStar Technologies Corporation, and Echosphere Limited Liability Corporation as additional defendants. The Company alleges that it is the owner of this patent, and further alleges that the defendants have willfully and deliberately infringed this patent by making, selling, offering to sell and/or selling digital video recording devices, digital video recording device software, and/or personal television services in the United States. On April 13, 2006, the jury rendered a verdict in favor of the Company in the amount of approximately \$74.0 million dollars. The jury ruled that the Company's patent is valid and that all nine of the asserted claims in the Company's patent are infringed by each of the accused EchoStar products. The jury also ruled that defendants willfully infringed the patent. On May 16, 2006, the USPTO issued its first Office Action in response to a request by the defendants for reexamination of the 389 patent. The USPTO reexamined all 61 claims set forth in the 389 patent, confirming the validity of the majority of the claims, including two of the claims that the defendants have been found to have willfully infringed, and rejecting some of the claims. TiVo intends to vigorously defend the validity of the rejected claims. On August 17, 2006, the Court denied the defendants' remaining defenses, and granted our motion for permanent injunction to prevent EchoStar Communications Corporation from making, using, offering for sale or selling in the United States the

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

following EchoStar DVRs: DP-501, DP-508, DP-510, DP-721, DP-921, DP-522, DP-625, DP-942, and all EchoStar Communications Corporation DVRs that are not more than colorably different from any of these products. The Court also ordered ECC to pay TiVo approximately \$74.0 million in damages as

## **Table of Contents**

awarded by the jury, prejudgment interest at the prime rate through October 31, 2006 of approximately \$5.6 million, and supplemental damages for infringement through October 31, 2006 in the amount of approximately \$10.3 million. The Court denied our request for enhanced damages and attorney's fees and costs. The Court denied EchoStar's request to stay the injunction pending appeal. On October 3, 2006, the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit stayed the district court's injunction pending appeal. On November 27, 2006, the district court denied all of EchoStar's post-judgment motions. On January 23, 2007, the district court awarded the Company prejudgment interest and supplemental damages from August 1, 2006 through September 8, 2006 in the amounts of approximately \$790,000 and \$3.5 million, respectively. On February 16, 2007, the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit required EchoStar to file its opening brief by April 18, 2007. The Company plans to seek an enhancement of damages for willfulness, prejudgment interest, attorney's fees and costs, and an injunction against the defendants' further infringement of the patent. The defendants' claim of inequitable conduct against the Company remains pending. The Company is incurring material expenses in this litigation.

On April 29, 2005, EchoStar Technologies Corporation filed a complaint against TiVo and Humax USA, Inc. in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Texas alleging infringement of U.S. Patent Nos. 5,774,186 ( Interruption Tolerant Video Program Viewing ), 6,529,685 B2 ( Multimedia Direct Access Storage Device and Formatting Method ), 6,208,804 B1 ( Multimedia Direct Access Storage Device and Formatting Method ) and 6,173,112 B1 ( Method and System for Recording In-Progress Broadcast Programs ). The complaint alleges that EchoStar Technologies Corporation is the owner by assignment of the patents allegedly infringed. The complaint further alleges that the TiVo and Humax have infringed, contributorily infringed and/or actively induced infringement of the patents by making, using, selling or importing digital video recording devices, digital video recording device software and/or personal television services in the United States that allegedly infringe the patents, and that such infringement is willful and ongoing. Under the terms of the Company's agreement with Humax governing the distribution of certain DVRs that enable the TiVo service, the Company is required to indemnify Humax against any claims, damages, liabilities, costs, and expenses relating to claims that the Company's technology infringes upon intellectual property rights owned by third parties. On May 10, 2005, Humax formally notified TiVo of the claims against it in this lawsuit as required by Humax's agreement with TiVo. On July 1, 2005, the defendants filed their answer and counterclaims. On May 10, 2006, the Court dismissed with prejudice, EchoStar's claim of infringement against TiVo and Humax relating to patent 112 ( Method and System for Recording In-Progress Broadcast Programs ) and claims 21-30 and 32 relating to patent 186 ( Interruption Tolerant Video Program Viewing ). A claim construction hearing was held on May 11, 2006. On July 14, 2006, United States Magistrate Judge Caroline M. Craven for the United States District Court, Eastern District of Texas, issued a stay of the case pending the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) completion of proceedings with respect to TiVo's request for reexamination of the 186, 685, and 804 patents. The Company intends to defend this action vigorously; however, it could be forced to incur material expenses in connection with this lawsuit and/or as a result of its indemnification obligations and, in the event there is an adverse outcome, the Company's business could be harmed.

On August 5, 2004, Compression Labs, Inc. filed a complaint against TiVo Inc., Acer America Corporation, AudioVox Corporation, BancTec, Inc., BenQ America Corporation, Color Dreams, Inc. (d/b/a StarDot Technologies), Google Inc., ScanSoft, Inc., Sun Microsystems Inc., Veo Inc., and Yahoo! Inc. in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Texas alleging infringement, inducement of others to infringe, and contributory infringement of U.S. Patent No. 4,698,672, entitled Coding System For Reducing Redundancy. The complaint alleges that Compression Labs, Inc. is the owner of this patent and has the exclusive rights to sue and recover for infringement thereof. The complaint further alleges that the defendants have infringed, induced infringement, and contributorily infringed this patent by selling devices and/or systems in the United States, at least portions of which are designed to be at least partly compliant with the JPEG standard. On February 16, 2005, the Judicial Panel on Multidistrict Litigation consolidated this and seven other related lawsuits and coordinated pretrial proceedings in the United States District Court for the Northern District of California, where pretrial proceedings are currently ongoing. On January 31, 2006, the United States Patent Office granted a request for reexamination of the patent in question. On May 25, 2006, the

## **Table of Contents**

USPTO issued its first office action confirming a majority of the claims in the 672 patent, while rejecting some claims. On June 28, 2006, the Court issued a claim construction ruling. In November 2006, the Company and the other defendants entered into an immaterial settlement agreement with Compression Labs under which the claims against the Company were dismissed without prejudice.

On January 3, 2007, Lycos, Inc. filed a complaint against the Company, Netflix, Inc., and Blockbuster, Inc. in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Virginia alleging infringement, inducement of others to infringe, and contributory infringement of U.S. Patent No. 5,867,799, entitled Information System and Method for Filtering a Massive Flow of Information Entities to Meet User Information Classification Needs and U.S. Patent No. 5,983,214, entitled System and Method Employing Individual User Content-Based Data and User Collaboration Feedback Data to Evaluate the Content of an Information Entity in a Large Information Communication Network. The complaint alleges that Lycos, Inc. is the owner of these patents and has the right to sue and recover for infringement thereof. The complaint further alleges that the Company has infringed this patent by making, using, selling, offering to sell and importing digital video recorder products that incorporate information filtering technology. The complaint further alleges that defendants continue to willfully infringe such patents. The Company intends to defend this action vigorously; however, it may incur expenses in connection with this litigation that may become material in the future, and in the event there is an adverse outcome, Company's business could be harmed.

**Consumer Litigation.** On December 22, 2005, a consumer class action lawsuit against TiVo Inc. was filed in the Superior Court of the State of California, County of San Francisco. This action, which is captioned *Nolz, et al. v. TiVo*, was brought on behalf of a purported class of purchasers of the Company's gift subscriptions which were allegedly sold to consumers in violation of a California law that allegedly makes it unlawful to sell gift certificates in California containing an expiration date. On March 23, 2007, the Court entered final judgment in the lawsuit approving the Company's settlement agreement with plaintiffs that included no admission or findings of any violations and dismissed the action. The settlement did not have a material effect on the Company's results of operations.

**Securities Litigation.** On June 12, 2001, a securities class action lawsuit in which the Company and certain of its officers and directors are named as defendants was filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. This action, which is captioned *Werberger v. TiVo et al.*, also names several of the underwriters involved in the Company's initial public offering as defendants. This class action was brought on behalf of a purported class of purchasers of the Company's common stock from September 30, 1999, the time of its initial public offering, through December 6, 2000. The central allegation in this action is that the underwriters in the initial public offering solicited and received undisclosed commissions from, and entered into undisclosed arrangements with, certain investors who purchased TiVo common stock in the initial public offering and the after-market. The complaint also alleges that the TiVo defendants violated the federal securities laws by failing to disclose in the initial public offering prospectus that the underwriters had engaged in these alleged arrangements. More than 150 issuers have been named in similar lawsuits. In July 2002, an omnibus motion to dismiss all complaints against issuers and individual defendants affiliated with issuers (including the TiVo defendants) was filed by the entire group of issuer defendants in these similar actions. On October 8, 2002, TiVo's officers were dismissed as defendants in the lawsuit. On February 19, 2003, the court in this action issued its decision on defendants' omnibus motion to dismiss. This decision dismissed the Section 10(b) claim as to TiVo but denied the motion to dismiss the Section 11 claim as to TiVo and virtually all of the other issuer-defendants.

On June 26, 2003, the plaintiffs announced a proposed settlement with the Company and the other issuer defendants. The proposed settlement provides that the plaintiffs will be guaranteed \$1.0 billion dollars in recoveries by the insurers of the Company and other issuer defendants. Accordingly, any direct financial impact of the proposed settlement is expected to be borne by the Company's insurers in accordance with the proposed settlement. In addition, the Company and the other settling issuer defendants will assign to the plaintiffs certain claims that they may have against the underwriters. If recoveries in excess of \$1.0 billion dollars are obtained by the plaintiffs from the

## **Table of Contents**

underwriters, the Company's and the other issuer defendants' monetary obligations to the class plaintiffs will be satisfied. Furthermore, the settlement is subject to a hearing on fairness and approval by the Federal District Court overseeing the IPO Litigation. On February 15, 2005, the Court issued an order preliminarily approving the terms of the proposed settlement. The Court also certified the settlement classes and class representatives for purposes of the proposed settlement only. On April 24, 2006, the Court held a fairness hearing to determine whether the proposed settlement should be approved. It is possible that the Federal District Court may not provide final approval to the settlement in whole or part. On December 5, 2006, the United States Court of Appeals for the 2nd Circuit issued a decision in *In re: Initial Public Offering Securities Litigation* (Docket No. 05-3349-cv), reversing the Federal District Court's finding that six focus cases involved in this litigation could be certified as class actions. It is not yet clear what impact, if any, the decision may have on the proposed settlement agreement. Plaintiffs have filed a petition for rehearing and/or for en banc review of the Second Circuit's decision, and the Federal District Court has indicated that it will not make any decision regarding the proposed settlement until the Second Circuit decides whether it will consider a rehearing. On January 24, 2007, the Second Circuit ordered the Underwriters to file a response on certain issues to Plaintiffs' request for a rehearing. In accordance with Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*, the Company believes any contingent liability related to this claim is not probable or estimable and therefore no amounts have been accrued in regards to this matter as of January 31, 2007.

It is not yet clear what impact, if any, the decision may have on the proposed settlement agreement. Plaintiffs filed a petition for rehearing and/or for en banc review of the Second Circuit's decision, and the Federal District Court indicated that it would not make any decision regarding the proposed settlement until the Second Circuit had decided whether to consider a rehearing. On April 6th, 2007, the Second Circuit denied plaintiffs' petition for rehearing, but allowed that plaintiffs might ask the district court to certify a more limited class. In accordance with Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*, the Company believes any contingent liability related to this claim is not probable or estimable and therefore no amounts have been accrued in regards to this matter as of January 31, 2007.

The Company is involved in numerous lawsuits in the ordinary course of its business. The Company assesses potential liabilities in connection with these lawsuits under Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*. The Company accrues an estimated loss for these loss contingencies if both of the following conditions are met: information available prior to issuance of the financial statements indicates that it is probable that a liability has been incurred at the date of the financial statements and the amount of loss can be reasonably estimated. As of January 31, 2007, the Company had accrued an immaterial liability amount for one of the lawsuits filed against it, no other lawsuits met the conditions for accrual. The Company expenses legal costs as they are incurred.

#### **ITEM 4. SUBMISSION OF MATTERS TO A VOTE OF SECURITY HOLDERS**

No matters were submitted to a vote of security holders during the quarter ended January 31, 2007.

**Table of Contents****PART II****ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDERS MATTERS, AND ISSUERS PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES**  
**Market Information for Common Equity**

Our common stock has traded on the Nasdaq National Market under the symbol **TIVO** since September 30, 1999. Prior to that time, there was no public trading market for our common stock.

The following table sets forth, for the periods indicated, the high and low sales prices of our common stock as reported by the Nasdaq National Market, on any trading day during the respective period:

| <b>Fiscal Year 2007</b>               | <b>High</b> | <b>Low</b> |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|------------|
| Fourth Quarter ended January 31, 2007 | \$ 6.50     | \$ 5.05    |
| Third Quarter ended October 31, 2006  | \$ 8.37     | \$ 6.19    |
| Second Quarter ended July 31, 2006    | \$ 8.49     | \$ 5.99    |
| First Quarter ended April 30, 2006    | \$ 9.49     | \$ 5.35    |
| <b>Fiscal Year 2006</b>               | <b>High</b> | <b>Low</b> |
| Fourth Quarter ended January 31, 2006 | \$ 6.06     | \$ 4.73    |
| Third Quarter ended October 31, 2005  | \$ 6.24     | \$ 4.56    |
| Second Quarter ended July 31, 2005    | \$ 7.75     | \$ 5.05    |
| First Quarter ended April 30, 2005    | \$ 6.89     | \$ 3.45    |

**Holders of Record**

As of April 3, 2007, we had 1,169 stockholders of record and the closing price of our common stock was \$6.45 per share.

**Dividend Policy**

We paid no cash dividends during the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 and we expect to continue our current policy of paying no cash dividends to holders of our common stock for the foreseeable future.

**Equity Compensation Plan Information**

Information required by this item with respect to equity compensation plans of the Company is incorporated by reference to the Company's Proxy Statement for its 2007 Annual Meeting of shareholders. The definitive Proxy Statement will be filed within 120 days of the end of the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007.

**Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities**

On August 23, 2001, five-year warrants were issued to convertible noteholders and bankers to purchase 2,192,404 shares of TiVo's common stock at an exercise price of \$7.85. On August 28, 2006, several of these holders exercised their warrants resulting in the issuance of 424,150 shares of TiVo's common stock, pursuant to the terms of the agreement, and net proceeds of approximately \$3.3 million. The balance of the warrants that would have resulted in the issuance of 1,768,254 shares of TiVo Inc. common stock expired unexercised.

**Table of Contents**

In September 2006, we had a cashless exercise of 1,323,120 four-year warrants at an exercise price of \$5.00 resulting in the issuance of 484,231 shares of our common stock.

On September 11, 2006 we issued 8,264,463 shares of our common stock, par value \$.001 per share, at \$7.865 per share to institutional investors. The issuance of shares was registered pursuant to our \$100 million universal shelf registration statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-113719). The net proceeds from this sale were approximately \$64.5 million after deducting our estimated offering expenses of \$484,000.

**Purchases of Equity Securities**

We have reacquired shares of stock from employees, upon the vesting of restricted stock that was granted under our 1999 Employee Incentive Plan. These shares were forfeited by the employees, and reacquired by us to satisfy the employees' minimum statutory tax withholding which is required on restricted stock once they become vested and are shown in the following table:

| Period                             | (a) Total Number of<br>Shares Purchased | (b) Average Price<br>Paid per<br>share | (c) Total Number of<br>Share Purchased<br>as Part of Publicly<br>Announced Plans<br>or Programs | (d) Maximum<br>Number (or<br>Approximate Dollar<br>Value) of<br>Shares<br>that May<br>Yet be<br>Purchased<br>Under<br>the Plans or<br>Programs |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| March 1 through March 31, 2006     | 4,454                                   | \$ 7.24                                |                                                                                                 | \$                                                                                                                                             |
| July 1 through July 31, 2006       | 29,575                                  | \$ 7.37                                |                                                                                                 | \$                                                                                                                                             |
| October 1 through October 31, 2006 | 46,474                                  | \$ 6.89                                |                                                                                                 | \$                                                                                                                                             |

The Company will continue to reacquire shares of stock from employees as their restricted stock grants vest.

**Stock Performance Graph**

The following table and graph compares the cumulative total stockholder returns for our common stock, the NASDAQ Composite index and the Research Data Group ( RDG ) Technology Composite index over the last five fiscal years. The graph and table assume an investment of \$100 in TiVo and in each index on January 31, 2002, and that dividends, if any were reinvested. The graph and table depict the change in value of TiVo in relation to the indices as of January 31<sup>st</sup> of each subsequent year (and not for any interim or other period). The stock performance shown on the graph and table below is not necessarily indicative of future price performance.

**Table of Contents**

|                                 | 2002      | 2003     | January 31, |           | 2006      | 2007      |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                                 |           |          | 2004        | 2005      |           |           |
| <b>TiVo Inc.</b>                | \$ 100.00 | \$ 85.17 | \$ 177.10   | \$ 66.06  | \$ 90.77  | \$ 88.14  |
| <b>NASDAQ Composite</b>         | \$ 100.00 | \$ 67.88 | \$ 105.70   | \$ 106.89 | \$ 121.35 | \$ 130.43 |
| <b>RDG Technology Composite</b> | \$ 100.00 | \$ 61.57 | \$ 97.40    | \$ 89.53  | \$ 101.46 | \$ 106.16 |

**ITEM 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA**

The following selected financial data as of and for the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, 2005, 2004, and 2003, respectively, have been derived from our consolidated financial statements audited by KPMG LLP, independent registered public accounting firm. These historical results are not necessarily indicative of the results of operations to be expected for any future period.

The data set forth below (in thousands, except per share data) should be read in conjunction with Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations and the consolidated financial statements included in Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data.

**Table of Contents**

|                                                                                        | 2007                                  | Fiscal Year Ended January 31,<br>2006      2005      2004 |             |             |             | 2003 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------|
|                                                                                        | (in thousands, except per share data) |                                                           |             |             |             |      |
| Consolidated Statement of Operations Data:                                             |                                       |                                                           |             |             |             |      |
| Revenues                                                                               |                                       |                                                           |             |             |             |      |
| Service revenues                                                                       | \$ 198,924                            | \$ 167,194                                                | \$ 107,166  | \$ 61,560   | \$ 39,261   |      |
| Technology revenues                                                                    | 19,061                                | 3,665                                                     | 8,310       | 15,797      | 20,909      |      |
| Hardware revenues                                                                      | 88,740                                | 72,093                                                    | 111,275     | 72,882      | 45,620      |      |
| Rebates, revenue share, and other payment to channel*                                  | (48,136)                              | (47,027)                                                  | (54,696)    | (9,159)     | (9,780)     |      |
| Net revenues                                                                           | 258,589                               | 195,925                                                   | 172,055     | 141,080     | 96,010      |      |
| Cost and Expenses                                                                      |                                       |                                                           |             |             |             |      |
| Cost of service revenues                                                               | 43,328                                | 34,179                                                    | 29,360      | 17,705      | 17,119      |      |
| Cost of technology revenues                                                            | 16,849                                | 782                                                       | 6,575       | 13,609      | 8,033       |      |
| Cost of hardware revenues                                                              | 112,212                               | 86,817                                                    | 120,323     | 74,836      | 44,647      |      |
| Research and development                                                               | 50,728                                | 41,087                                                    | 37,634      | 22,167      | 20,714      |      |
| Sales and marketing*                                                                   | 42,955                                | 35,047                                                    | 37,367      | 18,947      | 48,117      |      |
| General and administrative                                                             | 44,813                                | 38,018                                                    | 16,593      | 16,296      | 14,465      |      |
| Loss from operations                                                                   | (52,296)                              | (40,005)                                                  | (75,797)    | (22,480)    | (57,085)    |      |
| Interest income                                                                        | 4,767                                 | 3,084                                                     | 1,548       | 498         | 4,483       |      |
| Interest expense and other                                                             | (173)                                 | (14)                                                      | (5,459)     | (9,587)     | (27,569)    |      |
| Loss before income taxes                                                               | (47,702)                              | (36,935)                                                  | (79,708)    | (31,569)    | (80,171)    |      |
| Provision for income taxes                                                             | (52)                                  | (64)                                                      | (134)       | (449)       | (425)       |      |
| Net loss                                                                               | (47,754)                              | (36,999)                                                  | (79,842)    | (32,018)    | (80,596)    |      |
| Less: Series A redeemable convertible preferred stock dividend                         |                                       |                                                           |             |             | (220)       |      |
| Less: Accretion to redemption value of Series A redeemable convertible preferred stock |                                       |                                                           |             |             | (1,445)     |      |
| Net loss *                                                                             | \$ (47,754)                           | \$ (36,999)                                               | \$ (79,842) | \$ (32,018) | \$ (82,261) |      |
| Net loss per share                                                                     |                                       |                                                           |             |             |             |      |
| Basic and diluted*                                                                     | \$ (0.53)                             | \$ (0.44)                                                 | \$ (0.99)   | \$ (0.48)   | \$ (1.61)   |      |
| Weighted average shares used to calculate basic and diluted net loss per share         | 89,864                                | 83,683                                                    | 80,264      | 66,784      | 51,219      |      |

|                                                                | As of January 31, |           |           |            |           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|
|                                                                | 2007              | 2006      | 2005      | 2004       | 2003      |
|                                                                | (in thousands)    |           |           |            |           |
| <b>Consolidated Balance Sheet Data:</b>                        |                   |           |           |            |           |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                      | \$ 89,079         | \$ 85,298 | \$ 87,245 | \$ 138,210 | \$ 40,401 |
| Short-term investments                                         | 39,686            | 18,915    | 19,100    | 5,025      | 3,800     |
| Total assets*                                                  | 211,950           | 159,008   | 160,052   | 183,891    | 82,320    |
| Long-term portion of convertible notes payable                 |                   |           |           | 6,005      | 4,265     |
| Long-term portion of convertible notes payable-related parties |                   |           |           |            | 3,920     |
| Long-term portion of deferred revenues                         | 54,851            | 67,575    | 63,131    | 46,035     | 32,373    |
| Total stockholders' equity (deficit)*                          | 16,996            | (29,372)  | (2,692)   | 65,632     | (24,697)  |

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

### \* Changes to Previously Announced Fourth Quarter and Fiscal Year Ended January 31, 2007 Results

We have made adjustments to our previously announced results for the fourth quarter and fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, announced on March 7, 2007. During the course of preparation of our annual report on Form 10-K, we determined we had understated revenue share and sales and marketing expenses by a total of \$802,000 resulting in an increase in net loss per share of \$0.01 for the fiscal year and fourth quarter ended January 31, 2007.

### Quarterly Results of Operations

The following table presents certain unaudited statements of operations data for our eight most recent quarters ended January 31, 2007. In management's opinion, this unaudited information has been prepared on the same basis as the audited annual financial statements and includes all adjustments, consisting only of normal recurring adjustments, necessary for a fair representation of the unaudited information for the quarters presented. This information should be read in conjunction with our audited consolidated financial statements and the notes thereto, included elsewhere in this annual report. The results of operations for any quarter are not necessarily indicative of results that may be expected for any future period. Certain amounts in prior periods have been reclassified to conform to the current year presentation and adjusted for a change in an accounting policy.

**Table of Contents**

|                                                                           | Jan 31,<br>2007                                 | Oct 31,<br>2006 | Jul 31,<br>2006 | Three Months Ended |                 |             | Oct 31,<br>2005 | Jul 31,<br>2005 | Apr 30,<br>2005 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
|                                                                           |                                                 |                 |                 | Apr 30,<br>2006    | Jan 31,<br>2006 |             |                 |                 |                 |
|                                                                           | (unaudited, in thousands except per share data) |                 |                 |                    |                 |             |                 |                 |                 |
| <b>Revenues</b>                                                           |                                                 |                 |                 |                    |                 |             |                 |                 |                 |
| Service revenues                                                          | \$ 53,543                                       | \$ 49,000       | \$ 49,430       | \$ 46,951          | \$ 46,305       | \$ 42,296   | \$ 40,249       | \$ 38,344       |                 |
| Technology revenues                                                       | 3,837                                           | 3,616           | 3,450           | 8,158              | 663             | 901         | 425             | 1,676           |                 |
| Hardware revenues                                                         | 35,074                                          | 27,978          | 16,235          | 9,453              | 32,266          | 24,652      | 4,649           | 10,526          |                 |
| Rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel*                    | (15,204)                                        | (14,934)        | (9,948)         | (8,050)            | (19,167)        | (18,234)    | (5,988)         | (3,638)         |                 |
| Net revenues                                                              | 77,250                                          | 65,660          | 59,167          | 56,512             | 60,067          | 49,615      | 39,335          | 46,908          |                 |
| <b>Cost of revenues</b>                                                   |                                                 |                 |                 |                    |                 |             |                 |                 |                 |
| Cost of service revenues                                                  | 12,445                                          | 10,820          | 9,628           | 10,435             | 10,250          | 8,431       | 6,859           | 8,639           |                 |
| Cost of technology revenues                                               | 3,476                                           | 3,006           | 3,001           | 7,366              | (121)           | 77          | 599             | 227             |                 |
| Cost of hardware revenues                                                 | 43,534                                          | 31,925          | 21,607          | 15,146             | 38,811          | 24,667      | 7,697           | 15,642          |                 |
| Total cost of revenues                                                    | 59,455                                          | 45,751          | 34,236          | 32,947             | 48,940          | 33,175      | 15,155          | 24,508          |                 |
| Gross margin                                                              | 17,795                                          | 19,909          | 24,931          | 23,565             | 11,127          | 16,440      | 24,180          | 22,400          |                 |
| <b>Operating expenses</b>                                                 |                                                 |                 |                 |                    |                 |             |                 |                 |                 |
| Research and development                                                  | 12,755                                          | 12,221          | 12,891          | 12,861             | 10,693          | 9,712       | 9,778           | 10,904          |                 |
| Sales and marketing*                                                      | 17,099                                          | 10,123          | 8,344           | 7,389              | 10,637          | 10,006      | 7,574           | 6,830           |                 |
| General and administrative                                                | 8,852                                           | 9,811           | 11,091          | 15,059             | 11,769          | 11,702      | 8,409           | 6,138           |                 |
| Loss from operations                                                      | (20,911)                                        | (12,246)        | (7,395)         | (11,744)           | (21,972)        | (14,980)    | (1,581)         | (1,472)         |                 |
| Interest income                                                           | 1,426                                           | 1,291           | 988             | 1,062              | 900             | 826         | 734             | 624             |                 |
| Interest expense and other                                                | (8)                                             | (133)           | (29)            | (3)                | (1)             | (10)        | (2)             | (1)             |                 |
| Loss before income taxes                                                  | (19,493)                                        | (11,088)        | (6,436)         | (10,685)           | (21,073)        | (14,164)    | (849)           | (849)           |                 |
| Provision for income taxes                                                | (17)                                            | (4)             | (12)            | (19)               | (13)            |             | (43)            | (8)             |                 |
| Net loss                                                                  | \$ (19,510)                                     | \$ (11,092)     | \$ (6,448)      | \$ (10,704)        | \$ (21,086)     | \$ (14,164) | \$ (892)        | \$ (857)        |                 |
| Net loss per common share basic and diluted                               | \$ (0.20)                                       | \$ (0.12)       | \$ (0.07)       | \$ (0.13)          | \$ (0.25)       | \$ (0.17)   | \$ (0.01)       | \$ (0.01)       |                 |
| Weighted average common shares used to calculate basic net loss per share | 96,415                                          | 91,930          | 85,978          | 85,134             | 84,643          | 84,201      | 83,506          | 82,381          |                 |

\* Changes to Previously Announced Fourth Quarter and Fiscal Year Ended January 31, 2007 Results

We have made adjustments to our previously announced results for the fourth quarter and fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, announced on March 7, 2007. During the course of preparation of our annual report on Form 10-K, we determined we had understated revenue share and sales and marketing expenses by a total of \$802,000 resulting in an increase in net loss per share of \$0.01 for the fiscal year and fourth quarter ended January 31, 2007.

#### ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

You should read the following discussion and analysis in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements and the notes included elsewhere in this annual report and the section "Risk Factors" in Item 1A, as well as other cautionary statements and risks described elsewhere in this report, before deciding to purchase, sell or hold our common stock.

#### Company Overview

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

We are a leading provider of technology and services for digital video recorders. The subscription-based TiVo service redefines home entertainment by providing consumers with an easy way to record, watch, and control television and receive videos, pictures, and movies from cable, broadcast, and broadband sources. We offer such features as Season Pass recordings, WishList® searches, TiVoToGo transfers, TiVoCast content (which includes premium content delivered from Amazon Unbox), TiVo KidZone, TiVo Online Scheduling, and TiVo Product Watch. As of January 31, 2007, there were approximately 4.4 million subscriptions to the TiVo service. We distribute the TiVo service through consumer electronics retailers and through our on-line store at TiVo.com. Additionally, we provide the TiVo service through agreements with leading television service providers such as satellite television providers, including currently DIRECTV and in the future cable television operators, such as Comcast and Cox, and digital subscriber line, DSL, providers such as BellSouth and Earthlink. We also provide innovative marketing solutions for the television industry, including a unique platform for advertisers and audience research measurement.

**Table of Contents****Executive Overview and Outlook of Financial Results**

During the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, we experienced growth in our TiVo-Owned subscription base and subscription revenues. Through our continued investment in marketing and research and development, we increased our TiVo-Owned subscription base. However, this subscription growth was largely offset by the loss of a portion of our DIRECTV installed subscription base. Additionally, in fiscal year 2007 we elected to invest in subscription acquisition activities in an effort to expand our subscription base and promote the TiVo brand for future partnerships. TiVo-Owned subscription gross additions for the fiscal year 2007 were 429,000, which was down 13% from the fiscal year 2006.

For the fiscal year ending January 31, 2008, we plan to lower our consumer hardware rebates offerings thereby reducing our rebates, revenues share and other payments to channel and we will redirect a portion of those funds towards advertising expenditures to promote the TiVo brand and service, which will increase our sales and marketing expenses. In fiscal year 2008, we expect to continue to grow our TiVo-Owned subscription base; however, we expect this growth to continue to be offset by losses in our DIRECTV subscription installed base as DIRECTV no longer markets the TiVo service to its customers as of February 2007. We anticipate fiscal year 2008 will have continued service revenue growth as our TiVo-Owned subscription base increases and our advertising sales business grows. This service revenue growth will be somewhat offset by the continued decline of product lifetime subscription related revenues as they become fully recognized coupled with a decline in DIRECTV-related service revenues due to further losses in our DIRECTV subscription installed base. Development and deployment of the TiVo service software solution for Comcast and Cox are expected to launch in initial markets during fiscal year 2008. During fiscal year 2008, we expect to recognize technology revenue associated with the development work from our Comcast and Cox agreements.

The following table sets forth selected information as of our fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005:

|                                      | Fiscal Year Ended January 31, |             |             |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
|                                      | 2007                          | 2006        | 2005        |
|                                      | (In thousands)                |             |             |
| Service and technology revenues      | \$ 217,985                    | \$ 170,859  | \$ 115,476  |
| Net revenues                         | \$ 258,589                    | \$ 195,925  | \$ 172,055  |
| Cost of revenues                     | (172,389)                     | (121,778)   | (156,258)   |
| Operating expenses                   | (138,496)                     | (114,152)   | (91,594)    |
| Loss from operations                 | \$ (52,296)                   | \$ (40,005) | \$ (75,797) |
| Cash flows from operating activities | \$ (33,507)                   | \$ 3,425    | \$ (37,214) |

**Service and Technology Revenues.** Our service and technology revenues, which include subscription fees received for the TiVo service, advertising fees, and engineering and licensing fees, increased \$47.1 million or 28% during the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 compared to the prior fiscal year. This increase was primarily due to an increase in our cumulative TiVo-Owned subscription installed base of approximately 235,000 net TiVo-Owned subscriptions during the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, coupled with \$16.2 million in technology revenues from licensing and engineering work recognized from our Comcast Agreement.

**Net Revenues.** In addition to service and technology revenues, our net revenues include our hardware revenues as well as any offsetting effects of contra-revenue such as rebates, revenue shares, and other payments to channel. Net revenues increased by \$62.7 million or 32% during the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 compared to the prior fiscal year. The increase of \$16.6 million in hardware revenues in absolute dollars is attributed to increased sales to our new and existing retail channel customers and the rollout of our new TiVo Series2 DT and from our new TiVo Series3 HD DMR models.

**Cost of Revenues.** Our total costs of revenues, which include cost of service revenues, cost of technology revenues, and cost of hardware revenues, increased by \$50.6 million or 42% during the

## Table of Contents

fiscal year ended January 31, 2007. The cost of service and technology revenues for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 increased by \$25.2 million, or 72%, compared to the prior fiscal year primarily as a result of \$16.2 million in technology costs related to Comcast coupled with increased costs associated with our growing TiVo-Owned subscription base. The cost of hardware revenues for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 increased by \$25.4 million, or 29%, compared to the prior fiscal year, primarily due to increased hardware shipments related to our introduction of two new DVR models during the year.

**Operating Expenses.** Our operating expenses, including research and development, sales and marketing, and general and administrative expenses, increased \$24.3 million or 21% during the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 compared to the prior fiscal year. The largest contributor to the increase in operating expenses for the fiscal year end January 31, 2007 was non-cash stock compensation expense of \$13.2 million, compared to \$385,000 in the prior year. This increase of \$12.8 million was largely due to the adoption of Statement of Financial Accounting Standards (SFAS) 123R, Share-Based Payments.

**Cash Flows from Operating Activities.** Our cash used in operating activities for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 was \$33.5 million, as compared to \$3.4 million provided by operating activities for the prior fiscal year. This change in cash flows used in operating activities is largely due to the increase in our net loss coupled with increased inventory spending and reduction of deferred revenues due to the Company's decision to discontinue general sale of the product lifetime subscription service.

## Key Business Metrics

Management periodically reviews certain key business metrics in order to evaluate our operations, allocate resources, and drive financial performance in our business. Management monitors these metrics together and not individually as it does not make business decisions based upon any single metric.

**Subscriptions.** Management reviews this metric, and believes it may be useful to investors, in order to evaluate our relative position in the marketplace and to forecast future potential service revenues. Below is a table that details the growth in our subscription base during the past eight quarters. The TiVo-Owned lines refer to subscriptions sold directly by TiVo to consumers who have TiVo-enabled DVRs. The DIRECTV lines refer to subscriptions sold by DIRECTV to consumers who have integrated DIRECTV satellite receivers with TiVo service. Additionally, we provide a breakdown of the percent of TiVo-Owned subscriptions for which consumers pay recurring fees, including on a monthly and a prepaid one, two, or three year basis, as opposed to a one-time prepaid product lifetime fee.

|                                                                       | Jan 31,<br>2007 | Oct 31,<br>2006 | July 31,<br>2006 | Three Months Ended |                 | Oct 31,<br>2005 | Jul 31,<br>2005 | April 30,<br>2005 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| (Subscriptions in thousands)                                          |                 |                 |                  | April 30,<br>2006  | Jan 31,<br>2006 |                 |                 |                   |
| TiVo-Owned Subscription Gross Additions:                              | 163             | 101             | 74               | 91                 | 221             | 92              | 77              | 104               |
| Subscription Net Additions:                                           |                 |                 |                  |                    |                 |                 |                 |                   |
| TiVo-Owned                                                            | 101             | 53              | 30               | 51                 | 183             | 55              | 40              | 72                |
| DIRECTV                                                               | -91             | -37             | -29              | 2                  | 173             | 379             | 214             | 247               |
| <b>Total Subscription Net Additions</b>                               | <b>10</b>       | <b>16</b>       | <b>1</b>         | <b>53</b>          | <b>356</b>      | <b>434</b>      | <b>254</b>      | <b>319</b>        |
| Cumulative Subscriptions:                                             |                 |                 |                  |                    |                 |                 |                 |                   |
| TiVo-Owned                                                            | 1,726           | 1,625           | 1,572            | 1,542              | 1,491           | 1,308           | 1,253           | 1,213             |
| DIRECTV                                                               | 2,718           | 2,809           | 2,846            | 2,875              | 2,873           | 2,700           | 2,321           | 2,107             |
| <b>Total Cumulative Subscriptions</b>                                 | <b>4,444</b>    | <b>4,434</b>    | <b>4,418</b>     | <b>4,417</b>       | <b>4,364</b>    | <b>4,008</b>    | <b>3,574</b>    | <b>3,320</b>      |
| <b>Fully Amortized Active Lifetime Subscriptions</b>                  | <b>165</b>      | <b>138</b>      | <b>129</b>       | <b>122</b>         | <b>100</b>      | <b>89</b>       | <b>83</b>       | <b>76</b>         |
| <b>% of TiVo-Owned Cumulative Subscriptions paying recurring fees</b> | <b>58%</b>      | <b>55%</b>      | <b>53%</b>       | <b>52%</b>         | <b>51%</b>      | <b>51%</b>      | <b>51%</b>      | <b>51%</b>        |

We define a subscription as a contract referencing a TiVo-enabled DVR for which (i) a consumer has paid for the TiVo service and (ii) service is not canceled. We previously offered a



## **Table of Contents**

product lifetime subscription for general sale, under which consumers could purchase a subscription that is valid for the lifetime of a particular DVR. We count these as subscriptions until both of the following conditions are met: (i) the four-year period we use to recognize lifetime subscription revenues ends, and (ii) the related DVR has not made contact to the TiVo service within the prior six-month period. Lifetime subscriptions past the four-year mark which have not called into the TiVo service for six months are not counted in this total. We are not aware of any uniform standards for defining subscriptions and caution that our presentation may not be consistent with that of other companies. During the first quarter of fiscal year 2007, we discontinued general sale of the product lifetime service option.

TiVo-Owned subscription net additions increased by 235,000 subscriptions, bringing the TiVo-Owned installed subscription base to 1.7 million subscriptions for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007. TiVo-Owned subscription net additions for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 decreased by 115,000 compared to the same prior fiscal year period we believe, largely due to an increase in churn resulting from a larger subscription base and because of increased competition from DVRs distributed by cable and satellite providers, including DIRECTV's non-TiVo products, and the increasing importance of high definition television. The percent of cumulative TiVo-Owned subscriptions on a monthly or prepay plan increased, by 7% to 58% during the quarter ended January 31, 2007, as compared to the same prior-year period. DIRECTV installed subscription base decreased by 155,000 subscriptions to 2.7 million subscriptions as of January 31, 2007 as compared to the same prior year period. This decrease is due to DIRECTV's promotion of a competing DVR service from NDS.

As of January 31, 2007, approximately 165,000 product lifetime subscriptions had exceeded the four-year period we use to recognize product lifetime subscription revenues, but had made contact to the TiVo service within the prior six months, such TiVo product lifetime subscriptions represent approximately 23% of our cumulative lifetime subscriptions as compared to 13% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006. We continue to incur costs of services for these subscriptions without recognizing corresponding subscription revenues.

**TiVo-Owned Churn Rate per Month.** Management reviews this metric, and believes it may be useful to investors, in order to evaluate our ability to retain existing TiVo-Owned subscriptions (including both monthly and product lifetime subscriptions) by providing services that are competitive in the market. Management believes factors such as service enhancements, service commitments, higher customer satisfaction, and improved customer support may improve this metric. Conversely, Management believes factors such as increased competition, lack of competitive service features such as high definition television recording capabilities, for our primary product offerings, and increased price sensitivity may cause our TiVo-Owned Churn Rate per month to increase.

We define the TiVo-Owned Churn Rate per month as the total TiVo-Owned subscription cancellations in the period divided by the Average TiVo-Owned subscriptions for the period (including both monthly and product lifetime subscriptions), which then is divided by the number of months in the period. We calculate Average TiVo-Owned subscriptions for the period by adding the average TiVo-Owned subscriptions for each month and dividing by the number of months in the period. We calculate the average TiVo-Owned subscriptions for each month by adding the beginning and ending subscriptions for the month and dividing by two. We are not aware of any uniform standards for calculating churn and caution that our presentation may not be consistent with that of other companies.

**Table of Contents**

The following table presents our TiVo-Owned Churn Rate per month information:

|                                       | Fiscal Year Ended January 31,    |       |       |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------|-------|
|                                       | 2007                             | 2006  | 2005  |
|                                       | in thousands, except percentages |       |       |
| TiVo-Owned subscription cancellations | (194)                            | (144) | (69)  |
| Average TiVo-Owned subscriptions      | 1,584                            | 1,269 | 819   |
| Annual Churn Rate                     | -12%                             | -11%  | -8%   |
| Number of Months                      | 12                               | 12    | 12    |
| TiVo-Owned Churn Rate per month       | -1.0%                            | -0.9% | -0.7% |

The TiVo-Owned Churn Rate per month was 1.0% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 compared to .9% and .7% for the fiscal years ended January 31, 2006 and 2005, respectively. The TiVo-Owned Churn rate per month of 1.0% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 is primarily comprised of cancellations of recurring subscriptions. We also count as churn those product lifetime subscriptions that have both reached the end of the four-year revenue recognition period and whose DVRs have not contacted the TiVo service within the prior six months. Conversely, we do not count as churn product lifetime subscriptions that have not reached the end of the four-year revenue recognition period, regardless of whether such subscriptions continue to contact the TiVo service. We anticipate our TiVo-Owned Churn Rate per month will increase in future periods as a result of increased competition in the marketplace, competitive pricing issues, the growing importance of offering competitive service features such as high definition television recording capabilities, and increased churn from product lifetime subscriptions.

**Subscription Acquisition Cost or SAC.** Management reviews this metric, and believes it may be useful to investors, in order to evaluate trends in the efficiency of our marketing programs and subscription acquisition strategies. We define SAC as our total acquisition costs for a given period divided by TiVo-Owned subscription gross additions for the same period. We define total acquisition costs as the sum of sales and marketing expenses, rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel, minus hardware gross margin (defined as hardware revenues less cost of hardware revenues). This includes all fixed costs including headcount related expense, such as stock based compensation, marketing not directly associated with subscription acquisition, operating expenses for the advertising sales business, and allocations. We do not include DIRECTV subscription gross additions in our calculation of SAC because we incur limited or no acquisition costs for new DIRECTV subscriptions. We are not aware of any uniform standards for calculating total acquisition costs or SAC and caution that our presentation may not be consistent with that of other companies.

|                                                       | Fiscal Year Ended January 31, |               |                |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|----------------|
|                                                       | 2007                          | 2006          | 2005           |
| <b><u>Subscription Acquisition Costs</u></b>          |                               |               |                |
| Sales and marketing expenses                          | \$ 42,955                     | \$ 35,047     | \$ 37,367      |
| Rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel | 48,136                        | 47,027        | 54,696         |
| Hardware revenues                                     | (88,740)                      | (72,093)      | (111,275)      |
| Cost of hardware revenues                             | 112,212                       | 86,817        | 120,323        |
| <b>Total Acquisition Costs</b>                        | <b>114,563</b>                | <b>96,798</b> | <b>101,111</b> |
| <b>TiVo-Owned Subscription Gross Additions</b>        | <b>429</b>                    | <b>494</b>    | <b>555</b>     |
| <b>Subscription Acquisition Costs (SAC)</b>           | <b>\$ 267</b>                 | <b>\$ 196</b> | <b>\$ 182</b>  |

During the twelve months ended January 31, 2007, our total acquisition costs were \$114.6 million and SAC was \$267. Comparatively, total acquisition costs for the twelve months ended January 31, 2006 and 2005 were \$96.8 million and \$101.1 million, respectively and SAC was \$196 and \$182, respectively. SAC increased by \$71 or 36% for the twelve months ended January 31, 2007 compared to the prior-year period primarily due to our new multi-tiered pricing structure and bundled

**Table of Contents**

sales program that we implemented in March 2006 which includes a reduced priced TiVo DVR in exchange for a customer commitment to either a one, two, or three year service plan combined with higher hardware rebate offers that were available to consumers.

As a result of the seasonal nature of our subscription growth, SAC varies significantly during the year. Management primarily reviews this metric on an annual basis due to the timing difference between our recognition of promotional program expenses and the subsequent addition of the related subscription acquisition. For example, we have historically incurred increased sales and marketing expenses during our third quarter in anticipation of new subscriptions that may be added during the fourth quarter and in subsequent periods in addition to those added during the third quarter.

**Average Revenue Per Subscription or ARPU.** Management reviews this metric, and believes it may be useful to investors, in order to evaluate the potential of our subscription base to generate revenues from a variety of sources, including subscription fees, advertising, and audience research measurement. ARPU does not include rebates, revenue share and other payments to channel that reduce our GAAP revenues. Additionally, under the accounting policy for our bundled sales program, revenues associated with these bundled sales transactions, a portion of which were previously recognized as hardware revenues, are now being recognized in service revenues. As a result, you should not use ARPU as a substitute for measures of financial performance calculated in accordance with GAAP. Management believes it is useful to consider this metric excluding the costs associated with rebates, revenue share and other payments to channel because of the discretionary and varying nature of these expenses and because management believes these expenses are more appropriately monitored as part of SAC. We are not aware of any uniform standards for calculating ARPU and caution that our presentation may not be consistent with that of other companies.

We calculate ARPU per month for TiVo-Owned subscriptions by subtracting DIRECTV-related service revenues (which includes DIRECTV subscription service revenues and DIRECTV-related advertising revenues) from our total reported service revenues and dividing the result by the number of months in the period. We then divide by Average TiVo-Owned subscriptions for the period, calculated as described above for churn rate. The following table shows this calculation and reconciles ARPU for TiVo-Owned subscriptions to our reported service and technology revenues:

| TiVo-Owned Average Revenue per Subscription | Fiscal Year Ended January 31, |            |            |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|------------|
|                                             | 2007                          | 2006       | 2005       |
|                                             | (In thousands, except ARPU)   |            |            |
| Service and Technology revenues             | \$ 217,985                    | \$ 170,859 | \$ 115,476 |
| Less: Technology revenues                   | (19,061)                      | (3,665)    | (8,310)    |
| Total Service revenues                      | 198,924                       | 167,194    | 107,166    |
| Less: DIRECTV-related service revenues      | (32,066)                      | (32,788)   | (21,071)   |
| TiVo-Owned-related service revenues         | 166,858                       | 134,406    | 86,095     |
| Average TiVo-Owned revenues per month       | 13,905                        | 11,201     | 7,175      |
| Average TiVo-Owned per month subscriptions  | 1,584                         | 1,269      | 819        |
| TiVo-Owned ARPU per month                   | \$ 8.78                       | \$ 8.83    | \$ 8.76    |

TiVo-Owned ARPU per month for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 decreased from fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 and increased from fiscal year ended January 31, 2005 to \$8.78 from \$8.83 and from \$8.76, respectively. The decrease in TiVo-Owned ARPU for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 was due to an increase of 65,000 TiVo-Owned product lifetime subscriptions that reached the end of the four-year period we use to recognize lifetime subscription revenue, as compared to the same prior year period. However, this decrease in TiVo-Owned ARPU due to the increase in fully-amortized and still active product lifetime subscriptions was partially offset by our new multi-tiered pricing structure and bundled sales program which yielded a higher monthly subscription rate for new TiVo-Owned subscriptions. We expect the number of fully-amortized and still active product lifetime subscriptions to increase in fiscal year ended January 31, 2008. The increase of \$.07 for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 was largely due to increased volume of monthly subscriptions as compared to the same prior year period.

**Table of Contents**

We calculate ARPU per month for DIRECTV subscriptions by first subtracting TiVo-Owned-related service revenues (which includes TiVo-Owned subscription service revenues and TiVo-Owned related advertising revenues) from our total reported service revenues. Then we divide average revenues per month for DIRECTV-related service revenues by average subscriptions for the period. The following table shows this calculation and reconciles ARPU for DIRECTV subscriptions to service and technology revenues:

| DIRECTV Average Revenue per Subscription  | Fiscal Year Ended January 31, |            |            |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|------------|
|                                           | 2007                          | 2006       | 2005       |
|                                           | (In thousands, except ARPU)   |            |            |
| Service and Technology revenues           | \$ 217,985                    | \$ 170,859 | \$ 115,476 |
| Less: Technology revenues                 | (19,061)                      | (3,665)    | (8,310)    |
| Total Service revenues                    | 198,924                       | 167,194    | 107,166    |
| Less: TiVo-Owned-related service revenues | (166,858)                     | (134,406)  | (86,095)   |
| DIRECTV-related service revenues          | 32,066                        | 32,788     | 21,071     |
| Average DIRECTV revenues per month        | 2,672                         | 2,732      | 1,756      |
| Average DIRECTV per month subscriptions   | 2,606                         | 2,376      | 1,154      |
| DIRECTV ARPU per month                    | \$ 1.03                       | \$ 1.15    | \$ 1.52    |

For fiscal year 2007, pursuant to the recently amended DIRECTV agreement, TiVo deferred a portion of the DIRECTV subscription fees equal to the fair value of the undelivered development services. Otherwise the recurring subscriptions fees in this agreement are similar to the recurring monthly per household fees for the households with DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service activated since 2002.

ARPU per month for DIRECTV subscriptions for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 decreased from the same-year prior periods to \$1.03 from \$1.15 and \$1.52, respectively. The decrease for fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 was largely a result of the deferred DIRECTV revenues described above, which impacted ARPU by a decrease of \$.08. The decrease in ARPU for fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 as compared to the same prior year period was a result of acquiring subscriptions at lower recurring revenues than subscriptions added during earlier phases of our DIRECTV relationship.

In fiscal 2008, we expect ARPU per month for DIRECTV subscriptions to decrease further as the term of our Seventh Amendment of our Development Agreement continues. Under the Seventh Amendment, after February 15, 2007, DIRECTV will pay us a monthly fee for all DIRECTV households with TiVo receivers similar to the lower amount paid by DIRECTV for households with DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service deployed since March 15, 2002, subject to a monthly minimum payment by DIRECTV. We will continue to defer a portion of these fees as a non-refundable credit to fund mutually agreed development, maintenance, and support services, which may potentially be offset by increased advertising revenues in the future.

**Critical Accounting Estimates**

Critical accounting estimates are those that reflect significant judgments and uncertainties, and may potentially result in materially different results under different assumptions and conditions. We base our discussion and analysis on our consolidated financial statements, which have been prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles as described in Item 8. Note 2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies in the notes to our consolidated financial statements. The preparation of these financial statements requires us to make estimates and judgments that affect our reported amounts of assets, liabilities, revenue, and expenses and related disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities. On an ongoing basis, we evaluate our estimates. We

**Table of Contents**

base our estimates on historical experience and on other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances. The results of this analysis form the basis for our judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results may materially differ from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions. For a detailed discussion on the application of these and other accounting estimates, see Item 8. Note 2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies in the notes to our consolidated financial statements.

**Recognition Period for Product Lifetime Subscriptions Revenues.** TiVo previously offered a product lifetime subscription option for general sale for the life of the DVR for a one-time, prepaid payment. During the first quarter of fiscal year 2007, we discontinued general sale of the product lifetime service option. We recognize subscription revenues from product lifetime subscriptions ratably over a four-year period, based on our estimate of the useful life of these DVRs. As of January 31, 2007, 165,000 product lifetime subscriptions had exceeded the four-year period we use to recognize product lifetime subscription revenues and had made contact with the TiVo service within the prior six month period. This represents approximately 23% of our cumulative lifetime subscriptions as compared to 13% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006. During fiscal year 2008, we will continue to monitor the useful life of a TiVo-enabled DVR and the impact of higher churn, increased competition and compatibility of our existing TiVo units with high definition programming. Further analysis will allow us to determine if our useful life is shorter or longer than four-years, in which case we may revise the estimated life and we would recognize revenues from this source over a shorter or longer period.

**Engineering Services Project Cost Estimates.** For engineering services that are essential to the functionality of the software or involve significant customization or modification, we recognize revenues using the percentage-of-completion method, as described in Statement of Position (SOP) 81-1 Accounting for Performance of Construction-Type and Certain Production-Type Contracts. We recognize revenue by measuring progress toward completion based on the ratio of costs, principally labor, incurred to total estimated costs of the project, an input method. In general, these contracts are long-term and complex. We believe we are able to make reasonably dependable estimates based on historical experience and various other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances. These estimates include forecasting of costs and schedules, estimating contract revenue related to contract performance, projecting cost to complete, tracking progress of costs incurred to date, and projecting the remaining effort to complete the project. Costs included in engineering services are labor, materials, and overhead related to the specific activities that are required for the project. Costs related to general infrastructure or platform development are not included in the engineering services project cost estimates. These estimates are assessed continually during the term of the contract and revisions are reflected when the conditions become known. In some cases, we have accepted engineering services contracts that were expected to be losses at the time of acceptance. Provisions for all losses on contracts are recorded when estimates determine that a loss will be incurred on a contract. Using different cost estimates, or different methods of measuring progress to completion, engineering services revenues and expenses may produce materially different results. A favorable change in estimates in a period could result in additional revenue and profit, and an unfavorable change in estimates could result in a reduction of revenue and profit or the recording of a loss that would be borne solely by TiVo. For the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 the majority of our technology revenues are related to the Comcast development agreement and are offset by an equal amount of development cost recognized as cost of technology revenues.

**Consumer Rebate Redemption Rate.** In accordance with Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF) Issue No. 01-09, Accounting for Consideration Given by a Vendor to a Customer (Including a Reseller of the Vendor's Products), we record an estimated potential liability for our consumer rebate program that is based on the percentage of customers that were reimbursed for the rebate for similar past programs and adjust estimates to consider actual redemptions. Currently, the estimated redemption rate for the \$150 rebate program is 64% based on historical redemptions for previous \$150 rebate programs. Starting November 5, 2006, the Company had new rebate programs which offer a rebate of \$180 for a dual tuner DVR unit and \$220 for a single tuner DVR unit. The estimated weighted average redemption rate for these programs is 74%. Starting February 18, 2007, the rebate

**Table of Contents**

amount was lowered to \$150 for a dual tuner DVR unit and \$170 for a single tuner DVR unit. During the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, we recorded a total charge of \$29.5 million, of which \$9.2 million related to our earlier \$150 rebate programs and \$20.3 million related to the rebate programs announced in November 2006 and February 2007. As of January 31, 2007, \$14.5 million remains accrued on the Company's balance sheet. A one-percentage point deviation in our redemption rebate estimate would have resulted in an increase or decrease in our rebate liability as of January 31, 2007 of approximately \$140,000. Upon full completion of consumer rebate programs, any unredeemed consumer rebate expense will be reversed. These consumer rebates and sales incentives programs are recognized as rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel in our consolidated financial statements.

**Valuation of Inventory.** We value inventory at the lower of cost or market with cost determined on the first-in, first-out method. We base write-downs of inventories upon current facts and circumstances and determine net realizable value on an aggregate pool basis. We perform a detailed assessment of excess and obsolete inventory and purchase commitments at each balance sheet date, which includes a review of, among other factors, demand requirements and market conditions. Based on this analysis, we record adjustments, when appropriate, to reflect inventory of finished products and materials on hand at lower of cost or market and to reserve for products or materials which are not forecasted to be used. We also record accruals for charges that represent Management's estimate of the Company's exposure to the contract manufacturer for excess non-cancelable purchase commitments. As of January 31, 2007, we impaired \$2.0 million in inventory and reserved approximately \$500,000 for excess non-cancelable purchase commitments. Although we make every effort to ensure the accuracy of our forecasts of product demand and pricing assumptions, any significant unanticipated changes in demand or technological developments would significantly impact the value of our inventory and our reported operating results. In the future, if we find that our estimates are too optimistic and determine that our inventory needs to be written down further, we will be required to recognize such costs in our cost of revenue at the time of such determination. Conversely, if we find our estimates are too pessimistic and we subsequently sell product that has previously been written down, our gross margin in that period will be favorably impacted.

**Valuation of Stock-Based Compensation.** On February 1, 2006, we adopted the provisions of SFAS 123R, *Share-Based Payment*, requiring us to recognize expense related to the fair value of our stock-based compensation awards. SFAS No. 123R eliminates the option to account for stock-based compensation transactions with employees using the intrinsic value method under Accounting Principle Board (APB) Opinion No. 25, *Accounting for Stock Issued to Employees*, and instead requires that such transactions be accounted for using a fair-value based method. The fair value of our restricted stock awards was calculated based on the fair market value of our stock at the grant date. SFAS No. 123R requires the use of a valuation model to calculate the fair value of stock-based awards. We have elected to use the Black-Scholes option pricing model to determine the fair value of our stock options and ESPP awards. This model requires the input of highly subjective assumptions, including expected stock price volatility and the estimated life of each award and interest rates.

The expected volatility is based on a combination of historical volatility of our common stock and implied volatility in market traded options on our common stock. The expected life of an award is based on the simplified calculation of expected life as defined by Staff Accounting Bulletin (SAB) 107, *Share-Based Payment*. The interest rate is based on the average of U.S. Treasury yield curve on investments with lives approximating the term during the fiscal quarter an option is granted.

In addition, SFAS No. 123R requires us to develop an estimate of the number of share-based awards which will be forfeited due to employee turnover. We use historical data to estimate pre-vesting option forfeitures and record stock-based compensation expense only for those awards that are expected to vest. Quarterly changes in the estimated forfeiture rate can affect our gross margin, research and development expenses, sales and marketing expenses, and general and administrative expenses. The expense we recognize in future periods could also differ from the current period and/or our forecasts due to adjustments in the assumed forfeiture rates.

## Table of Contents

### Recent Accounting Pronouncements

In September 2006, the SEC released Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 108, "Considering the Effects of Prior Year Misstatements when Quantifying Misstatements in Current Year Financial Statements" (SAB 108). SAB 108 provides interpretive guidance on the SEC's views regarding the process of quantifying materiality of financial statement misstatements. SAB 108 is effective for fiscal years ending after November 15, 2006. The adoption of SAB 108 did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In September 2006, the FASB issued Statement No. 157, "Fair Value Measurements" (SFAS 157). SFAS 157 defines fair value, establishes a framework and gives guidance regarding the methods used for measuring fair value, and expands disclosures about fair value measurements. SFAS 157 is effective for financial statements issued for fiscal years beginning after November 15, 2007, and interim periods within those fiscal years. The Company is currently evaluating the impact of adopting SFAS 157 on its consolidated financial statements.

In June 2006, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) issued FASB Interpretation No. 48 (FIN 48), "Accounting for Uncertainty in Income Taxes" an interpretation of FASB Statement No. 109. The interpretation contains a two-step approach to recognizing and measuring uncertain tax positions accounted for in accordance with SFAS No. 109. The first step is to evaluate the tax position for recognition by determining if the weight of available evidence indicates it is more likely than not that the position will be sustained on audit, including resolution of related appeals or litigation processes, if any. The second step is to measure the tax benefit as the largest amount which is more than 50% likely of being realized upon ultimate settlement. FIN 48 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2006, which will be the Company's fiscal year 2008, and is required to be recognized as a change in accounting principle through a cumulative-effect adjustment to retained earnings as of the beginning of the year of adoption. The Company estimates that the adoption of FIN 48 will not have a significant impact on the Company's financial position and results of operations.

In June 2006, the FASB ratified the provisions of Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF) Issue No. 06-3, "How Taxes Collected from Customers and Remitted to Governmental Authorities Should Be Presented in the Income Statement (That Is, Gross versus Net Presentation)". EITF Issue No. 06-3 requires that the presentation of taxes within revenue-producing transactions between a seller and a customer, including but not limited to sales, use, value added, and some excise taxes, should be on either a gross (included in revenue and cost) or a net (excluded from revenue) basis. In addition, for any such taxes that are reported on a gross basis, a company should disclose the amounts of those taxes in interim and annual financial statements for each period for which an income statement is presented if those amounts are significant. The disclosure of those taxes can be done on an aggregate basis. EITF Issue No. 06-3 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2006, which will be the Company's fiscal year 2008. EITF 06-3 will not impact the method for recording these sales taxes in the Company's consolidated financial statements as the Company has historically presented sales excluding all taxes and the Company currently has no plan to change its method of revenue reporting.

### Results of Operations

**Net Revenues.** Our net revenues for the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005 as a percentage of total net revenues were as follows:

|                                                       | 2007        | Fiscal Year Ended January 31,<br>2006<br>(In thousands, except percentages) |             |      |            | 2005 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------|------------|------|
| Service revenues                                      | \$ 198,924  | 77%                                                                         | \$ 167,194  | 85%  | \$ 107,166 | 62%  |
| Technology revenues                                   | \$ 19,061   | 7%                                                                          | \$ 3,665    | 2%   | 8,310      | 5%   |
| Hardware revenues                                     | \$ 88,740   | 34%                                                                         | \$ 72,093   | 37%  | 111,275    | 65%  |
| Rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel | \$ (48,136) | -18%                                                                        | \$ (47,027) | -24% | (54,696)   | -32% |
| Net revenues                                          | \$ 258,589  | 100%                                                                        | \$ 195,925  | 100% | \$ 172,055 | 100% |
| Change from same prior-year period                    |             | 32%                                                                         |             | 14%  |            | 22%  |

## **Table of Contents**

Of the total service revenues and technology revenues for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005, \$6.8 million was generated from related parties. No revenues were generated from related parties in the fiscal years ended January 31, 2006 or 2007.

**Service Revenues.** Service revenues for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 increased 19% or \$31.7 million over the service revenues for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006. This increase was primarily due to the year over year growth in our TiVo-Owned subscription base. During the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 we added 235,000 net TiVo-Owned subscriptions bringing the total installed base to over 4.4 million as of January 31, 2007. Service revenues for the year ended January 31, 2006 were \$167.2 million, 56% higher than the service revenues for the year ended January 31, 2005. During the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, we added 1.4 million net subscriptions to the TiVo service.

Consumer demand for TiVo-enabled DVR and DVD products was driven by broad availability and strong support in the retail channel, consumer rebate programs, and increased consumer awareness of the TiVo service. We intend to generate continued TiVo-Owned subscription growth by managing our relationships with leading retailers such as Best Buy, Circuit City, Radio Shack, and others and by launching advertising campaigns directed at growing our subscription base. We anticipate fiscal year 2008 will have continued service revenue growth as our TiVo-Owned subscription installed base increases and our advertising sales business grows; however, we expect to see a decrease in DIRECTV-related service revenues in fiscal year 2008 as compared to fiscal year 2007.

**Technology Revenues.** In the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, we derived 7% of our net revenues, or \$19.1 million, from licensing and engineering services compared to 2% of our net revenues, or \$3.7 million, in the prior fiscal year. Technology revenues for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 were 420%, or \$15.4 million higher than the prior fiscal year end largely due to revenues of \$16.2 million in revenues recognized from engineering services related to our agreement with Comcast, of which \$4.6 million is related to services performed in fiscal year 2006, and was offset by an equal amount of development expense recognized as cost of technology revenues. Technology revenues for fiscal year 2006 were 56% lower than the fiscal year 2005 as engineering services for existing contracts were completed and engineering services related to our agreements with Comcast had not yet begun. Additionally, in fiscal year 2006, we determined that we needed to incur \$1.0 million of development costs related to a loss contract deemed substantially complete in fiscal year 2005. As a result, we recorded a total charge of \$1.0 million to the statement of operations in the three months ended July 31, 2005 of which \$435,000 was a reduction in technology revenues and \$598,000 was an increase in costs of technology revenues. Technology revenues for the twelve months ended January 31, 2006 were largely a result of amortization of deferred revenue on existing license contracts.

**Table of Contents**

**Hardware Revenues.** Hardware revenues, net of allowance for sales returns, for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 was 34% of our net revenues compared to 37% for the prior fiscal year. The increase in hardware revenues in absolute dollars is attributed to increased sales to our new and existing retail channel customers and the rollout of our new TiVo Series2 DT and TiVo Series3 HD DMR models, which was partially offset by lower hardware prices under our bundled sales programs. For the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, hardware revenues were 37% of our net revenues compared to 65% for the prior fiscal year. For the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, the decrease in hardware revenues was largely a result of decreased hardware sales volume due to increased competition from DIRECTV's TiVo products, as well as from other DVR distributors and cable and service providers. Additionally, the average selling price has declined year-over-year due to consumer incentive programs, including one program which offered a free DVR with the purchase of an annual or product lifetime product subscription.

For the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, one retail customer generated \$30.5 million, \$31.7 million, and \$49.5 million of hardware revenues or 12%, 44%, and 29% of net revenues, respectively.

**Rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel.** We recognize certain marketing-related payments as a reduction of revenues in our consolidated statements of operations. These reductions are recorded based on an estimated potential liability for our consumer rebate program, which is based on the percentage of customers that were reimbursed for the rebate for similar past programs and then we adjust estimates to reflect actual redemptions. Rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel increased by \$1.1 million or 2% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 as compared to the same prior year period. In the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, we had an increase of \$4.8 million in rebate expense due to higher hardware rebates amounts offered and an increased redemption rate. This increase was largely offset by a decrease of \$1.8 million in marketing development funds and \$1.9 million in TiVo rewards expense. For the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel decreased by \$7.7 million, as compared to the same prior fiscal year period. The primary contributor to the decrease in rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 as compared to the prior fiscal year was lower than expected rebate expenses due to fewer programs offered in the first half of fiscal year 2006. In addition, we had a reversal of \$7.7 million of rebate expense during the six months ended July 31, 2005, which was primarily a result of a truing up the rebate accruals established in fiscal year 2005, for certain rebate programs that ended during the three months ended April 30, 2005. Consumer rebate expenses were \$29.5 million, \$24.7 million, and \$37.1 million for the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively. For the fiscal year ending January 31, 2008, we plan to lower our consumer hardware rebate offerings thereby reducing our rebates, revenues share and other payments to channel.

**Cost of service and technology revenues.**

|                                                               | Fiscal Year Ended January 31,      |            |           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------|-----------|
|                                                               | 2007                               | 2006       | 2005      |
|                                                               | (In thousands, except percentages) |            |           |
| Cost of service revenues                                      | \$ 43,328                          | \$ 34,179  | \$ 29,360 |
| Cost of technology revenues                                   | \$ 16,849                          | \$ 782     | \$ 6,575  |
| Cost of service and technology revenues                       | \$ 60,177                          | \$ 34,961  | \$ 35,935 |
| Change from same prior-year period                            | 72%                                | -3%        | 15%       |
| Percentage of service and technology revenues                 | 28%                                | 20%        | 31%       |
| Service gross margin                                          | \$ 155,596                         | \$ 133,015 | \$ 77,806 |
| Technology gross margin                                       | \$ 2,212                           | \$ 2,883   | \$ 1,735  |
| Service gross margin as a percentage of service revenue       | 78%                                | 80%        | 73%       |
| Technology gross margin as a percentage of technology revenue | 12%                                | 79%        | 21%       |

Costs of service and technology revenues consist primarily of telecommunication and network expenses, employee salaries, call center, credit card processing fees, and other expenses related to providing the TiVo service. Also included are expenses related to providing engineering services to

**Table of Contents**

our customers, including employee salaries and related costs, as well as prototyping and other material costs. Cost of service and technology revenues for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 increased \$25.2 million, or 72%, compared to the prior fiscal year.

Cost of service revenues for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 increased by \$9.1 million or 27%. The year over year increase was due to a 140% increase in information technology related expense, or \$1.8 million; an 84% increase in license fees, or \$1.7 million; a 10% increase customer care and retention costs, or \$1.3 million; a 26% increase in credit card fees, or \$1.0 million; and an 81% increase in depreciation and amortization expenses or \$886,000. These increases were a result of our 16% increase in TiVo-Owned subscription base, increased royalty costs associated with our new TiVo Series2 DT and Series3 DMR models and our increased focus on issues of customer care and retention. Cost of service revenues for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 increased by 16% or \$4.8 million as compared to the prior fiscal year. The year over year increase was due to increased customer care center costs of 32% or \$3.1 million compared to the prior fiscal year, a 14% or \$454,000 increase in credit card fees, and an 11% or \$327,000 increase in salaries and wages expense, as compared to the prior fiscal year. These increases were a direct result of our 45%, or 1.4 million, increase in subscriptions.

Cost of technology revenues increased by \$16.1 million for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, as compared to the prior fiscal year. These increase in costs are related to the Comcast development agreement and are offset by an equal amount of development revenue recognized as technology revenues.

Cost of technology revenues decreased by 88% or \$5.8 million for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, as compared to the prior fiscal year. These decreases were a result of decreased technology revenues related to existing contracts, where development services had been substantially completed. Additionally, the Comcast development work was in the preliminary stages and all of the \$4.6 million of incurred costs that had been deferred at January 31, 2006 were subsequently recognized as cost during the first quarter of fiscal year ended January 31, 2007.

**Cost of hardware revenues.**

|                                                           | <b>Fiscal Year Ended January 31,</b>      |             |             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
|                                                           | <b>2007</b>                               | <b>2006</b> | <b>2005</b> |
|                                                           | <b>(In thousands, except percentages)</b> |             |             |
| Cost of hardware revenues                                 | \$ 112,212                                | \$ 86,817   | \$ 120,323  |
| Change from same prior-year period                        | 29%                                       | -28%        | 61%         |
| Percentage of hardware revenues                           | 126%                                      | 120%        | 108%        |
| Hardware gross margin                                     | \$ (23,472)                               | \$ (14,724) | \$ (9,048)  |
| Hardware gross margin as a percentage of hardware revenue | -26%                                      | -20%        | -8%         |

Costs of hardware revenues include all product costs associated with the TiVo-enabled DVRs we distribute and sell, including manufacturing-related overhead and personnel, warranty, certain licensing, order fulfillment, and freight costs. We engage a contract manufacturer to build TiVo-enabled DVRs. We sell this hardware as a means to grow our service revenues and, as a result, do not intend to generate positive gross margins from these hardware sales. The hardware gross margin loss, as a percentage of hardware revenue, for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 increased by approximately 6% compared to the prior fiscal year. This increase is due primarily to the adoption of our multi-tiered pricing and bundled sales model in our direct sales channel which has resulted in an increased gross margin loss, both in terms of absolute dollars and as a percentage of hardware revenue. For the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 we sold more DVR units into the retail channel than in the prior fiscal year, largely due to the new TiVo Series2 DT and TiVo Series3 HD DMR models were launched during the fiscal year. While these new models generated higher revenues, they also had higher per unit costs.

**Table of Contents**

The hardware gross margin loss, as a percentage of hardware revenue, for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 had increased as compared to the prior fiscal year due largely to our pricing programs during fiscal year 2006 as compared to the same prior year period. The number of DVRs sold to our retailers and through our direct channel decreased by approximately 35% compared to the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005, due to increased competition from DIRECTV's TiVo products, as well as from other DVR distributors. The combination of (1) lower overall hardware revenues and (2) a greater percentage of our hardware revenues sold through our direct sales channel, which received \$150 instant rebates, resulted in an increased gross margin loss, in terms of absolute dollars, for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006.

**Research and development expenses.**

|                                    | <b>Fiscal Year Ended January 31,</b>      |             |             |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
|                                    | <b>2007</b>                               | <b>2006</b> | <b>2005</b> |
|                                    | <b>(In thousands, except percentages)</b> |             |             |
| Research and development expenses  | \$ 50,728                                 | \$ 41,087   | \$ 37,634   |
| Change from same prior-year period | 23%                                       | 9%          | 70%         |
| Percentage of net revenues         | 20%                                       | 21%         | 22%         |

Our research and development expenses consist primarily of employee salaries, related expenses, and consulting expenses. Research and development expenses, as a percentage of net revenue decreased 1%, for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, as compared to the prior fiscal year. However, in terms of absolute dollars, research and development increased 23% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, as compared to the prior fiscal year. The absolute dollar increase in expenses for fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 was due to an increase of \$7.6 million in headcount related costs associated with an increase in engineering headcount, \$5.7 million in additional stock based compensation in connection with the adoption of FAS 123R, offset by \$6.2 million in engineering expenses allocated to cost of technology revenues.

Research and development expenses, as a percentage of net revenue decreased 1%, for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, as compared to the prior fiscal year. However, in terms of absolute dollars, research and development increased 9% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, as compared to the prior fiscal year. The absolute dollar increase in expenses for fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 was due largely to a \$2.8 million decrease in engineering expenses allocated to cost of technology revenues.

**Sales and marketing expenses.**

|                                    | <b>Fiscal Year Ended January 31,</b>      |             |             |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
|                                    | <b>2007</b>                               | <b>2006</b> | <b>2005</b> |
|                                    | <b>(In thousands, except percentages)</b> |             |             |
| Sales and marketing expenses       | \$ 42,955                                 | \$ 35,047   | \$ 37,367   |
| Change from same prior-year period | 23%                                       | -6%         | 97%         |
| Percentage of net revenues         | 17%                                       | 18%         | 22%         |

Sales and marketing expenses consist primarily of employee salaries and related expenses, media advertising (including print, online, radio, and television), public relations activities, special promotions, trade shows, and the production of product related items, including collateral and videos. Sales and marketing expenses, as a percentage of net revenue, decreased by 1% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, as compared to the prior fiscal year and, in terms of absolute dollars increased by 23% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, as compared to the prior fiscal year. The largest contributors in terms of absolute dollars, to the increased sales and marketing expenses for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 from the prior fiscal year, was advertising expense that increased by 30% or by \$5.3 million, coupled with an increase in stock-based compensation expense

**Table of Contents**

of \$1.6 million associated with the adoption of FAS123R. We expect sales and marketing expense to increase in fiscal year 2008, in terms of absolute dollars, as a result of our planned new marketing and advertising strategies.

Sales and marketing expenses, as a percentage of net revenue, decreased by 4% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, as compared to the prior fiscal year and, in terms of absolute dollars decreased by 6%, or \$2.3 million, for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, as compared to the prior fiscal year. The largest contributor to the decreased sales and marketing expenses for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, in terms of absolute dollars, was advertising expense that decreased by 35% or by \$5.6 million, from the prior fiscal year. This decrease was offset by \$1.4 million for salaries and bonuses due to an increase in regular headcount by 10 employees. In addition we had a \$1.3 million increase in public relations and events expense.

**General and administrative expenses.**

|                                    | Fiscal Year Ended January 31,      |           |           |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
|                                    | 2007                               | 2006      | 2005      |
|                                    | (In thousands, except percentages) |           |           |
| General and administrative         | \$ 44,813                          | \$ 38,018 | \$ 16,593 |
| Change from same prior-year period | 18%                                | 129%      | 2%        |
| Percentage of net revenues         | 17%                                | 19%       | 10%       |

General and administrative expenses consist primarily of employee salaries and related expenses for executive, administrative, accounting, information technology systems, customer operations personnel, facility costs, and legal and professional fees. General and administrative expenses, as a percentage of net revenues decreased 2% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, as compared to the same prior year period, and in terms of absolute dollars, increased 18% compared to the same prior year period. These increases are largely related to increased salary and related costs of \$3.3 million due to an increase in head count of 14 employees and costs associated with transition arrangements of highly compensated executives. Additionally, we had an increase in stock compensation expense of \$5.6 million in connection with the adoption of FAS 123R. These increases were partially offset by a decrease in legal spending of \$2.4 million.

General and administrative expenses, as a percentage of net revenue increased 9% for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 as compared to the prior fiscal year, and in terms of absolute dollars increased 129%, compared to the prior fiscal year. This increase was largely due to increased legal and consulting expenses of \$14.5 million in connection with our ongoing lawsuits with EchoStar and other parties. Salaries and wages expense increased by \$4.0 million for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 due to an increase in regular headcount of 13 personnel, costs associated with transition arrangements of highly compensated executives and adoption of the non-executive bonus plan as compared to the prior fiscal year.

**Interest income.** Interest income resulting from cash and cash equivalents held in interest bearing accounts and short-term investments for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 was \$4.8 million or approximately a 55% increase over the \$3.1 million from the prior fiscal year. The increase was a result of an increase in the average interest rate earned in the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 to approximately 5.0% from 3.3% in the prior fiscal year.

For the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 interest income was \$3.1 million, or approximately double the \$1.5 million from the prior fiscal year. The increase was a result of an increase to 3.3% in the average interest rate earned in the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 from 1.4% in the prior fiscal year.

**Interest expense and other.** Interest expense and other for fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 was \$51,000, as compared to \$14,000 from the prior fiscal year. For the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 interest expense was \$14,000, as compared to \$5.5 million from the prior fiscal year. This decrease was largely due to no outstanding convertible notes payable during fiscal year 2006.

**Table of Contents**

For fiscal year ended January 31, 2005, interest expense and other primarily consists of cash and non-cash charges related to interest expense paid for coupon interest expense on the convertible notes and interest expense paid to our consumer electronics manufacturers according to negotiated deferred payment schedules.

|                                         | Fiscal Year Ended January 31,      |           |              |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------|--------------|
|                                         | 2007                               | 2006      | 2005         |
|                                         | (In thousands, except percentages) |           |              |
| Total cash interest expense             | 51                                 | 14        | 608          |
| Total non-cash interest expense         |                                    |           | 4,854        |
| Total interest expense                  | 51                                 | 14        | 5,462        |
| Total other expenses                    |                                    |           | (3)          |
| <b>Total interest expense and other</b> | <b>51</b>                          | <b>14</b> | <b>5,459</b> |

Change from same prior-year period 264% -100% -43%

**Provision for income taxes.** Income tax provision was \$52,000, \$64,000, and \$134,000 in fiscal 2007, 2006 and 2005 due to state income taxes and foreign withholding taxes paid.

**Liquidity and Capital Resources**

We have financed our operations and met our capital expenditure requirements primarily from the proceeds of the sale of equity and debt securities. Our cash resources are subject, in part, to the amount and timing of cash received from our subscriptions, licensing and engineering services customers, and hardware customers. At January 31, 2007, we had \$128.8 million of cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments. We believe our cash and cash equivalents, short term investments, combined with funds generated/used from operations, and our revolving line of credit facility with Citigroup represent sufficient resources to fund operations, capital expenditures, and working capital needs through the next twelve months.

**Statement of Cash Flows Discussion**

Our primary sources of liquidity are cash flows provided by operations and by financing activities. Although we currently anticipate these sources of liquidity will be sufficient to meet our cash needs through the next twelve months, we may require or choose to obtain additional financing. Our ability to obtain financing will depend, among other things, on our development efforts, business plans, operating performance, and the condition of the capital markets at the time we seek financing. We cannot assure you that additional financing will be available to us on favorable terms when required, or at all. If we raise additional funds through the issuance of equity, equity-linked or debt securities, those securities may have rights, preferences or privileges senior to the rights of our common stock, and our stockholders may experience dilution. Please refer to Part I, Item 1A, Risk Factors for further discussion.

The following table summarizes our cash flow activities:

|                                                     | Fiscal Year Ended January 31, |          |             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------|-------------|
|                                                     | 2007                          | 2006     | 2005        |
|                                                     | (In thousands)                |          |             |
| Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities | \$ (33,507)                   | \$ 3,425 | \$ (37,214) |
| Net cash used in investing activities               | \$ (41,237)                   | (10,805) | (18,099)    |
| Net cash provided by financing activities           | \$ 78,525                     | 5,433    | 4,348       |

---

**Table of Contents**

**Net Cash Used in Operating Activities**

The increase in net cash used in operating activities of \$36.9 million from fiscal year 2006 to 2007 was largely attributable to the increase in net loss of \$10.8 million, coupled with an increase in inventory expenditures of \$20.2 million, and a decrease in cash provided by deferred revenues of \$26.1 million, due to the amortization of product lifetime subscription revenues. These usages were partially offset by an increase in non-cash stock compensation of \$14.3 million, and a decrease in payments made to vendors of \$6.6 million.

The increase in net cash provided by operating activities from fiscal year 2005 to 2006 was largely attributable to the decrease in net loss incurred during fiscal year 2006. The primary changes in net loss for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 were higher service and technology gross margins of \$56.4 million coupled with lower rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel of \$7.7 million, which were partially offset by increased operating expenses of \$22.6 million, as compared to the prior fiscal year.

Cash from deferred revenues increased during the fiscal years 2006 and 2005 because we sold product lifetime subscriptions and received up front license and engineering services payments. These activities cause us to receive cash payments in advance of providing the services, which we recognize as deferred revenues. As we no longer offer product lifetime subscriptions for general sale, we expect the amount of deferred revenues attributable to the product lifetime subscriptions to decrease in the future.

**Net Cash Used in Investing Activities**

The net cash used in investing activities for fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 was approximately \$41.2 million compared to \$10.8 million in fiscal year 2006. This increase was largely due to purchases of property and equipment for \$7.3 million to support our business growth, \$1.1 million used to purchase technology utilized within our new TiVo Series2 DT box, \$12.0 million for acquisition of intellectual property rights, including licenses to third party patents, and \$28.6 million for purchases of short-term investments. This usage was offset by the sale of short-term investments of \$7.9 million.

Net cash used in investing activities for fiscal year 2006 was largely due to the acquisition of intangible assets, including intellectual property rights, for \$3.9 million and purchases of property and equipment of \$7.1 million to support our business. Short-term investment purchases were offset by short term investment sales. The decrease in net cash used in investing in fiscal year 2006 compared to fiscal year 2005 was due to the decrease of \$185,000 in short term investments activities for fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 as compared to the increase of \$14.1 million for the fiscal year ending January 31, 2005.

**Net Cash Provided by Financing Activities**

For the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, the principal source of cash generated from financing activities related to the issuance of common stock, of which \$64.5 million was the net proceeds of our September 5, 2006 underwritten public offering, \$9.1 million was related to stock option exercises, \$3.3 million was from proceeds from warrant exercises, and \$2.8 million related to issuances of stock under our employee stock purchase plan. Additionally, we reacquired 80,503 shares of stock from employees to satisfy \$570,000 in tax withholding requirements on newly vested restricted stock grants, and have paid \$641,000 of expenses related to acquiring our line of credit.

For the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, the principal source of cash generated from financing activities related to the issuance of common stock for stock options exercised and our employee stock purchase plan. These transactions generated \$7.0 million and \$2.9 million, respectively. We paid down our line of credit with Silicon Valley Bank by \$8.0 million, which consisted of \$4.5 million outstanding as of January 31, 2005 and incremental borrowings during fiscal year 2006 of \$3.5 million.

## **Table of Contents**

For the fiscal year 2005, the principal source of cash generated from financing activities related to our borrowing under our line of credit with Silicon Valley Bank and the issuance of common stock under our employee stock purchase plan. These transactions generated \$4.5 million and \$2.4 million, respectively, for the year ended January 31, 2005. Additionally, \$1.7 million was obtained from the issuance of common stock for stock options exercised and \$4.3 million was used as payment for the repayment at maturity of all of the remaining outstanding 7% convertible notes.

### ***Financing Agreements***

***\$100 Million Universal Shelf Registration Statement.*** We have an effective universal shelf registration statement on Form S-3 (No. 333-113719) on file with the Securities and Exchange Commission under which we may issue up to \$100,000,000 of securities, including debt securities, common stock, preferred stock, and warrants. On September 5, 2006 we sold 8,264,463 shares of our common stock, par value \$.001 per share, at \$7.865 per share in an underwritten public offering. The sale of the shares closed on September 11, 2006. The sale of the shares was registered pursuant to our \$100 million universal shelf registration statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-113719). The net proceeds from this sale were approximately \$64.5 million after deducting our estimated offering expenses of \$484,000. We intend to use the net proceeds from the sale of our common stock for general corporate purposes, which may include: funding research, development, sales and marketing, increasing our working capital, reducing indebtedness, and capital expenditures. Pending the application of the net proceeds, we have invested the net proceeds primarily in U.S. government securities and money market funds, as well as in investment-grade, interest bearing securities. Depending upon market conditions, we may issue additional securities under this or future registration statements.

### ***Revolving Line of Credit Facility with Citigroup.***

On January 25, 2007, we entered into a credit agreement, together with a post-closing agreement and related security and other ancillary agreements, with Citigroup Global Markets Realty Corp., as lender and agent. Citigroup, as lender, may syndicate its commitment under the credit agreement to other lenders, subject to certain limitations. This credit facility replaces a line of credit with Silicon Valley Bank, which was in place from July 17, 2003 until it expired on September 28, 2006.

Under the terms of the credit agreement Citigroup will extend a revolving line of credit equal to the lesser of \$50 million or amounts available pursuant to a borrowing base calculation. As of January 31, 2007, we were able to borrow \$50 million. We may request that an additional \$50 million be added to the revolving line of credit. The credit agreement requires us to use proceeds exclusively for working capital and general corporate purposes. As of April 13, 2007 we had no amounts outstanding under this revolving line of credit.

Borrowings under the credit agreement are secured by a first-priority security interest on substantially all of the Company's current and future assets (except for certain intellectual property held by our subsidiaries and certain other assets). Borrowings under the credit agreement will bear interest at a rate equal to 1-month LIBOR for U.S. dollar deposits plus 4.0%, but during an event of default, the interest rate becomes 2.0% above the rate in effect immediately before the event of default.

The credit agreement includes, among other terms and conditions, limitations on our ability to create, incur, assume or be liable for indebtedness (other than certain types of permitted indebtedness); dispose of assets outside the ordinary course (subject to certain exceptions); acquire, merge or consolidate with or into another person or entity (other than certain types of permitted acquisitions); create, incur or allow any lien on any of its property or assign any right to receive income (except for certain permitted liens); make investments (other than certain types of investments); or pay dividends or make distributions (each subject to certain exceptions). Our previous line of credit with Silicon Valley Bank contained restrictive covenants with generally similar limitations. At January 31, 2007, we were in compliance with these covenants and had zero outstanding under the line of credit. The line of credit terminates and any and all borrowings are due on January 25, 2010, but may be terminated earlier by us without penalty upon written notice and prompt repayment of all amounts borrowed.

**Table of Contents****Contractual Obligations**

As of January 31, 2007, we had contractual obligations to make the following cash payments:

| Contractual Obligations                   | Total            | Payments due by Period |                 |           |              |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------------|-----------------|-----------|--------------|
|                                           |                  | Less than 1 year       | 1-3 years       | 3-5 years | Over 5 years |
|                                           |                  | (In thousands)         |                 |           |              |
| Operating leases                          | \$ 7,148         | \$ 2,331               | \$ 4,817        |           |              |
| Purchase obligations                      | 15,768           | 15,768                 |                 |           |              |
| <b>Total contractual cash obligations</b> | <b>\$ 22,916</b> | <b>\$ 18,099</b>       | <b>\$ 4,817</b> | <b>\$</b> | <b>\$</b>    |

*Purchase Commitments with Contract Manufacturers and Suppliers.* We purchase components from a variety of suppliers and use several contract manufacturers to provide manufacturing services for our products. During the normal course of business, in order to manage manufacturing lead times and help assure adequate component supply, we enter into agreements with contract manufacturers and suppliers that either allow them to procure inventory based upon criteria as defined by us or that establish the parameters defining our requirements. In certain instances, these agreements allow us the option to cancel, reschedule, and adjust our requirements based on our business needs prior to firm orders being placed. The table above displays that portion of our purchase commitments arising from these agreements that is firm, non-cancelable, and unconditional.

Other commercial commitments as of January 31, 2007, were as follows:

|                                      | Total         | Less than 1 year |           |               |           |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|
|                                      |               | 1-3 years        | 3-5 years | Over 5 years  |           |
|                                      |               | (In thousands)   |           |               |           |
| Standby letter of credit             | \$ 477        | \$               | \$        | \$ 477        | \$        |
| <b>Total contractual obligations</b> | <b>\$ 477</b> | <b>\$</b>        | <b>\$</b> | <b>\$ 477</b> | <b>\$</b> |

**Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

As part of our ongoing business, we generally do not engage in transactions that generate relationships with unconsolidated entities or financial partnerships, such as entities often referred to as structured finance or special purpose entities. Accordingly, our operating results, financial condition, and cash flows are not generally subject to off-balance sheet risks associated with these types of arrangements. We did not have any material off-balance sheet arrangements at January 31, 2007.

**CAUTIONARY STATEMENT REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

This annual report on Form 10-K contains certain forward-looking statements within the meaning of section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. These statements relate to, among other things:

our future investments in subscription acquisition activities, including rebate offers to consumers, offers of bundled hardware and service subscriptions, advertising expenditures, and other marketing activities;

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

our future earnings including expected future service and technology revenues and future TiVo-Owned and DIRECTV ARPU;

expectations of the growth in the future DVR market generally;

possible future impact of our change in accounting policy regarding our bundled sales program;

our financial results, and expectations for profitability in the future;

## **Table of Contents**

possible future increases in our general and administrative expenses, including expenditures related to lawsuits involving us such as the EchoStar patent infringement cases;

possible future increases in our operating expenses, including increases in customer support and retention expenditures;

future subscription growth or attrition of both TiVo-Owned and third party service provider subscriptions (such as DIRECTV, Comcast, and Cox);

expectation of future technology and service revenues from Comcast and Cox and future deployment of the TiVo service by them;

our estimates of the useful life of TiVo-enabled DVRs in connection with the recognition of revenue received from product lifetime subscriptions;

consumer rebate redemption rates and sales incentive programs;

expectations regarding the seasonality of business and subscription additions;

our intentions to continue to grow the number of TiVo-Owned subscriptions through our relationships with major retailers;

our expectations related to future increases in advertising and audience research measurement revenues;

our expectations related to changes in the cost of our hardware revenues and the reasons for changes in the volume of DVRs sold to retailers;

our ability to fund operations, capital expenditures, and working capital needs during the next year; and

our ability to raise additional capital through the financial markets in the future.

Forward-looking statements generally can be identified by the use of forward-looking terminology such as believe, expect, may, will, intend, estimate, continue, ongoing, predict, potential, and anticipate or similar expressions or the negative of those terms or expressions. These statements involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors, which may cause our actual results, performance or achievements to differ materially from those expressed or implied by such forward-looking statements. Such factors include, among others, the information contained under the caption Part I, Item 1A. Risk Factors in this annual report. The reader is cautioned not to place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements, which reflect management's analysis only as of the date of this annual report and we undertake no obligation to publicly update or revise any forward-looking statements in this annual report. The reader is strongly urged to read the information set forth under the caption Part I, Item 1, Business, Part II, Item 7, Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations, and Part I, Item 1A, Risk Factors for a more detailed description of these significant risks and uncertainties.

## **ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK**

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

Our exposure to market risk for changes in interest rates relates primarily to our investment portfolio. We do not use derivative financial instruments in our investment portfolio and we conduct transactions in U.S. dollars. Our investment portfolio only includes highly liquid instruments with original maturities of less than one year, held for investment purposes, not trading purposes. Due to the short-term nature of our cash equivalents and short-term investments, we do not anticipate any material effect on our portfolio due to fluctuations in interest rates.

The table below presents principal amounts and related weighted average interest rates for our cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments as of January 31, 2007 and 2006, respectively.

**Table of Contents**

|                                                                                                                                                                                 | <b>Fiscal Year Ended January 31,</b> |             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                 | <b>2007</b>                          | <b>2006</b> |
| Cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments (in thousands)                                                                                                             | \$ 128,765                           | \$ 104,213  |
| Average interest rate                                                                                                                                                           | 4.97%                                | 3.30%       |
| Although payments under the operating lease for our facility are tied to market indices, we are not exposed to material interest rate risk associated with the operating lease. |                                      |             |

---

**Table of Contents**

**ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA**

The Company's consolidated financial statements and notes thereto appear on pages 66 to 101 of this annual report on Form 10-K. The unaudited quarterly results of our consolidated operations for our two most recent fiscal years are incorporated herein by reference under Item 6. Selected Financial Data.

**Index to Consolidated Financial Statements**

|                                                                  |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| <u>Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u>   | 65 |
| <u>Consolidated Balance Sheets</u>                               | 66 |
| <u>Consolidated Statements of Operations</u>                     | 67 |
| <u>Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity (Deficit)</u> | 68 |
| <u>Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows</u>                     | 71 |
| <u>Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</u>                | 73 |

**Table of Contents**

**Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

The Board of Directors and Stockholders

TiVo Inc.:

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of TiVo Inc. and subsidiaries (the Company) as of January 31, 2007 and 2006, and the related consolidated statements of operations, stockholders' equity (deficit), and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended January 31, 2007. These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of TiVo Inc. and subsidiaries as of January 31, 2007 and 2006, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended January 31, 2007, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

As discussed in note 2 to the consolidated financial statements, effective February 1, 2006, the Company adopted the provisions of Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 123 (revised 2004), *Share Based Payment*.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the effectiveness of TiVo Inc.'s internal control over financial reporting as of January 31, 2007, based on criteria established in *Internal Control-Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO), and our report dated April 12, 2007 expressed an unqualified opinion on management's assessment of, and the effective operation of, internal control over financial reporting.

/s/ KPMG LLP

Mountain View, California

April 12, 2007

**Table of Contents****TIVO INC.****CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS**

(In thousands, except share amounts)

|                                                                                                                              | January 31, 2007 | January 31, 2006 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>ASSETS</b>                                                                                                                |                  |                  |
| <b>CURRENT ASSETS</b>                                                                                                        |                  |                  |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                                                                                    | \$ 89,079        | \$ 85,298        |
| Short-term investments                                                                                                       | 39,686           | 18,915           |
| Accounts receivable, net of allowance for doubtful accounts of \$271 and \$56                                                | 20,641           | 20,111           |
| Inventories                                                                                                                  | 29,980           | 10,939           |
| Prepaid expenses and other, current                                                                                          | 3,071            | 8,744            |
| Total current assets                                                                                                         | 182,457          | 144,007          |
| <b>LONG-TERM ASSETS</b>                                                                                                      |                  |                  |
| Property and equipment, net                                                                                                  | 11,706           | 9,448            |
| Purchased technology, capitalized software, and intangible assets, net                                                       | 16,769           | 5,206            |
| Prepaid expenses and other, long-term                                                                                        | 1,018            | 347              |
| Total long-term assets                                                                                                       | 29,493           | 15,001           |
| Total assets                                                                                                                 | \$ 211,950       | \$ 159,008       |
| <b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY (DEFICIT)</b>                                                                        |                  |                  |
| <b>LIABILITIES</b>                                                                                                           |                  |                  |
| <b>CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>                                                                                                   |                  |                  |
| Accounts payable                                                                                                             | \$ 37,127        | \$ 24,050        |
| Accrued liabilities                                                                                                          | 36,542           | 37,449           |
| Deferred revenue, current                                                                                                    | 64,872           | 57,902           |
| Total current liabilities                                                                                                    | 138,541          | 119,401          |
| <b>LONG-TERM LIABILITIES</b>                                                                                                 |                  |                  |
| Deferred revenue, long-term                                                                                                  | 54,851           | 67,575           |
| Deferred rent and other                                                                                                      | 1,562            | 1,404            |
| Total long-term liabilities                                                                                                  | 56,413           | 68,979           |
| Total liabilities                                                                                                            | 194,954          | 188,380          |
| <b>COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES (see Note 8)</b>                                                                            |                  |                  |
| <b>STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY (DEFICIT)</b>                                                                                        |                  |                  |
| Preferred stock, par value \$0.001:                                                                                          |                  |                  |
| Authorized shares are 10,000,000;                                                                                            |                  |                  |
| Issued and outstanding shares - none                                                                                         |                  |                  |
| Common stock, par value \$0.001:                                                                                             |                  |                  |
| Authorized shares are 150,000,000;                                                                                           |                  |                  |
| Issued shares are 97,311,986 and 85,376,191, respectively and outstanding shares are 97,231,483 and 85,376,191, respectively | 97               | 85               |
| Additional paid-in capital                                                                                                   | 759,314          | 667,055          |
| Deferred compensation                                                                                                        |                  | (2,421)          |
| Accumulated deficit                                                                                                          | (741,845)        | (694,091)        |
| Less: Treasury stock, at cost - 80,503 shares                                                                                | (570)            |                  |

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

|                                                      |            |            |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------|
| Total stockholders' equity (deficit)                 | 16,996     | (29,372)   |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity (deficit) | \$ 211,950 | \$ 159,008 |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

**Table of Contents****TIVO INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS****(In thousands, except per share and share amounts)**

|                                                                                                                     | <b>Twelve Months Ended January 31,</b> |                    |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
|                                                                                                                     | <b>2007</b>                            | <b>2006</b>        | <b>2005</b>        |
| <b>Revenues</b>                                                                                                     |                                        |                    |                    |
| Service and technology revenues ( includes \$6,805 from related parties for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005) | \$ 217,985                             | \$ 170,859         | \$ 115,476         |
| Hardware revenues                                                                                                   | 88,740                                 | 72,093             | 111,275            |
| Rebates, revenue share, and other payments to channel                                                               | (48,136)                               | (47,027)           | (54,696)           |
| <b>Net revenues</b>                                                                                                 | <b>258,589</b>                         | <b>195,925</b>     | <b>172,055</b>     |
| <b>Cost of revenues</b>                                                                                             |                                        |                    |                    |
| Cost of service and technology revenues (1)                                                                         | 60,177                                 | 34,961             | 35,935             |
| Cost of hardware revenues                                                                                           | 112,212                                | 86,817             | 120,323            |
| <b>Total cost of revenues</b>                                                                                       | <b>172,389</b>                         | <b>121,778</b>     | <b>156,258</b>     |
| <b>Gross margin</b>                                                                                                 | <b>86,200</b>                          | <b>74,147</b>      | <b>15,797</b>      |
| <b>Research and development (1)</b>                                                                                 | <b>50,728</b>                          | <b>41,087</b>      | <b>37,634</b>      |
| Sales and marketing (1) (includes \$1,100 from related parties for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005)          | 42,955                                 | 35,047             | 37,367             |
| General and administrative (1)                                                                                      | 44,813                                 | 38,018             | 16,593             |
| <b>Total operating expenses</b>                                                                                     | <b>138,496</b>                         | <b>114,152</b>     | <b>91,594</b>      |
| <b>Loss from operations</b>                                                                                         | <b>(52,296)</b>                        | <b>(40,005)</b>    | <b>(75,797)</b>    |
| Interest income                                                                                                     | 4,767                                  | 3,084              | 1,548              |
| Interest expense and other                                                                                          | (173)                                  | (14)               | (5,459)            |
| <b>Loss before income taxes</b>                                                                                     | <b>(47,702)</b>                        | <b>(36,935)</b>    | <b>(79,708)</b>    |
| Provision for income taxes                                                                                          | (52)                                   | (64)               | (134)              |
| <b>Net loss</b>                                                                                                     | <b>\$ (47,754)</b>                     | <b>\$ (36,999)</b> | <b>\$ (79,842)</b> |
| <b>Net loss per common share - basic and diluted</b>                                                                | <b>\$ (0.53)</b>                       | <b>\$ (0.44)</b>   | <b>\$ (0.99)</b>   |
| <b>Weighted average common shares used to calculate basic and diluted net loss per share</b>                        | <b>89,864,237</b>                      | <b>83,682,575</b>  | <b>80,263,980</b>  |

(1) Includes stock-based compensation expense (benefit) as follows :

|                                         |          |      |     |
|-----------------------------------------|----------|------|-----|
| Cost of service and technology revenues | \$ 1,490 | \$   | \$  |
| Research and development                | 5,596    | (85) | 754 |
| Sales and marketing                     | 1,649    | 55   | 302 |
| General and administrative              | 5,977    | 415  |     |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.



**Table of Contents****TIVO INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS EQUITY (DEFICIT)**

(In thousands, except share amounts)

|                                                                                                       | Common Stock |        | Treasury |        | Additional         | Deferred     | Accumulated  | Total      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------|----------|--------|--------------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
|                                                                                                       | Shares       | Amount | Shares   | Amount | Paid-In<br>Capital | Compensation | Deficit      |            |
| <b>BALANCE JANUARY 31, 2004</b>                                                                       | 79,588,476   | \$ 80  |          | \$     | \$ 644,064         | \$ (1,262)   | \$ (577,250) | \$ 65,632  |
| Issuance of common stock for conversion of notes payable, \$3.99 per share                            | 1,553,883    | 2      |          |        | 6,198              |              |              | 6,200      |
| Issuance costs related to conversion of convertible notes payable                                     |              |        |          |        | (142)              |              |              | (142)      |
| Cashless exercise of 654,487 warrants resulting in the net issuance of 241,492 shares of common stock | 241,492      |        |          |        |                    |              |              |            |
| Issuance of common stock related to purchase of patent rights                                         | 31,708       |        |          |        | 306                |              |              | 306        |
| Issuance of common stock related to exercise of common stock options                                  | 448,086      |        |          |        | 1,689              |              |              | 1,689      |
| Issuance of common stock related to employee stock purchase plan                                      | 434,083      |        |          |        | 2,409              |              |              | 2,409      |
| Deferred compensation from issuance of stock options with exercise prices below fair market value     |              |        |          |        | 300                | (300)        |              |            |
| Retirement due to forfeiture of unvested restricted common stock                                      | (16,852)     |        |          |        | (144)              | 144          |              |            |
| Recognition of stock based compensation expense                                                       |              |        |          |        | 66                 | 990          |              | 1,056      |
| Net loss                                                                                              |              |        |          |        |                    |              | (79,842)     | (79,842)   |
| <b>BALANCE JANUARY 31, 2005</b>                                                                       | 82,280,876   | \$ 82  |          |        | \$ 654,746         | \$ (428)     | \$ (657,092) | \$ (2,692) |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

**Table of Contents****TIVO INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS EQUITY (DEFICIT)****(In thousands, except share amounts)**

|                                                                                                         | Common Stock |        | Treasury Stock |        | Additional         | Deferred     | Accumulated  | Total       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------|----------------|--------|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|
|                                                                                                         | Shares       | Amount | Shares         | Amount | Paid-In<br>Capital | Compensation | Deficit      |             |
| <b>BALANCE JANUARY 31, 2005</b>                                                                         | 82,280,876   | \$ 82  |                | \$     | \$ 654,746         | \$ (428)     | \$ (657,092) | \$ (2,692)  |
| Issuance of common stock related to exercise of common stock options                                    | 1,643,915    | 2      |                |        | 7,009              |              |              | 7,011       |
| Issuance of common stock related to employee stock purchase plan                                        | 671,348      | 1      |                |        | 2,922              |              |              | 2,923       |
| Cashless exercise of 1,323,120 warrants resulting in the net issuance of 338,190 shares of common stock | 338,190      |        |                |        |                    |              |              |             |
| Issuance of restricted shares of common stock                                                           | 480,000      |        |                |        | 2,934              | (2,934)      |              |             |
| Deferred Compensation for option vesting acceleration                                                   |              |        |                |        | 70                 | (70)         |              |             |
| Retirement due to forfeiture of unvested restricted shares                                              | (38,138)     |        |                |        | (326)              | 326          |              |             |
| Recognition of stock based compensation expense, net                                                    |              |        |                |        | (300)              | 685          |              | 385         |
| Net loss                                                                                                |              |        |                |        |                    |              | (36,999)     | (36,999)    |
| <b>BALANCE JANUARY 31, 2006</b>                                                                         | 85,376,191   | \$ 85  |                | \$     | \$ 667,055         | \$ (2,421)   | \$ (694,091) | \$ (29,372) |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

**Table of Contents****TIVO INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS EQUITY (DEFICIT)**

(In thousands, except share amounts)

|                                                                            | Common Stock |        | Treasury Stock |          | Additional         | Deferred     | Accumulated  | Total       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------|----------------|----------|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|
|                                                                            | Shares       | Amount | Shares         | Amount   | Paid-In<br>Capital | Compensation | Deficit      |             |
| <b>BALANCE JANUARY 31, 2006</b>                                            | 85,376,191   | \$ 85  |                | \$       | \$ 667,055         | \$ (2,421)   | \$ (694,091) | \$ (29,372) |
| Issuance of common stock related to exercise of common stock options       | 1,892,697    | 2      |                |          | 9,073              |              |              | \$ 9,075    |
| Issuance of common stock related to employee stock purchase plan           | 627,215      | 1      |                |          | 2,791              |              |              | \$ 2,792    |
| Deferred compensation - reversal due to adoption of FAS 123R               |              |        |                |          | (2,421)            | 2,421        |              | \$          |
| Issuance of common stock related to equity offering, net of issuance costs | 8,264,463    | 8      |                |          | 64,531             |              |              | \$ 64,539   |
| Issuance of common stock related to warrant exercise                       | 908,316      | 1      |                |          | 3,329              |              |              | \$ 3,330    |
| Issuance of restricted shares of common stock                              | 256,740      |        |                |          | 259                |              |              | \$ 259      |
| Retirement due to forfeiture of unvested restricted shares                 | (13,636)     |        |                |          | (15)               |              |              | \$ (15)     |
| Treasury Stock - repurchase of restricted stock for tax withholding        |              |        | (80,503)       | (570)    |                    |              |              | \$ (570)    |
| Recognition of stock based compensation expense, net                       |              |        |                |          | 14,712             |              |              | \$ 14,712   |
| Net loss                                                                   |              |        |                |          |                    |              | (47,754)     | \$ (47,754) |
| <b>BALANCE JANUARY 31, 2007</b>                                            | 97,311,986   | \$ 97  | (80,503)       | \$ (570) | \$ 759,314         | \$           | \$ (741,845) | \$ 16,996   |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

**Table of Contents****TIVO INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS****(In thousands)**

|                                                                                                                      | <b>Twelve Months Ended January 31,</b> |                   |                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
|                                                                                                                      | <b>2007</b>                            | <b>2006</b>       | <b>2005</b>        |
| <b>CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>                                                                          |                                        |                   |                    |
| Net loss                                                                                                             | \$ (47,754)                            | \$ (36,999)       | \$ (79,842)        |
| Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash provided by (used in) operating activities:                            |                                        |                   |                    |
| Depreciation and amortization of property and equipment and intangibles                                              | 7,759                                  | 6,345             | 4,896              |
| Loss on disposal of fixed assets                                                                                     |                                        | 2                 | 13                 |
| Non-cash interest expense                                                                                            |                                        |                   | 4,854              |
| Recognition of stock-based compensation expense                                                                      | 14,712                                 | 385               | 1,056              |
| Changes in assets and liabilities:                                                                                   |                                        |                   |                    |
| Accounts receivable, net (change includes \$1,500 from related parties for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005)   | (530)                                  | 5,768             | (13,748)           |
| Inventories                                                                                                          | (19,041)                               | 1,165             | (3,537)            |
| Prepaid expenses and other (change includes \$6,100 from related parties for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005) | 5,643                                  | (3,377)           | 2,798              |
| Accounts payable                                                                                                     | 11,963                                 | 5,314             | 3,708              |
| Accrued liabilities (change includes \$(880) from related parties for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005)        | (663)                                  | 4,276             | 17,354             |
| Deferred revenue (change includes \$(1,814) from related parties for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005)         | (5,754)                                | 20,329            | 24,861             |
| Deferred rent and other long-term liabilities                                                                        | 158                                    | 217               | 373                |
| Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities                                                                  | \$ (33,507)                            | \$ 3,425          | \$ (37,214)        |
| <b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>                                                                          |                                        |                   |                    |
| Purchases of short-term investments                                                                                  | (28,621)                               | (15,502)          | (23,150)           |
| Sales of short-term investments                                                                                      | 7,850                                  | 15,687            | 9,075              |
| Acquisition of property and equipment                                                                                | (7,341)                                | (7,075)           | (3,924)            |
| Acquisition of capitalized software and intangibles                                                                  | (13,125)                               | (3,915)           | (100)              |
| Net cash used in investing activities                                                                                | \$ (41,237)                            | \$ (10,805)       | \$ (18,099)        |
| <b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>                                                                          |                                        |                   |                    |
| Borrowing under bank line of credit                                                                                  |                                        | 3,500             | 4,500              |
| Payments to bank line of credit                                                                                      |                                        | (8,000)           |                    |
| Payment of financing expenses related to line of credit                                                              | (641)                                  |                   |                    |
| Proceeds from issuance of common stock, net                                                                          | 64,539                                 |                   |                    |
| Proceeds from issuance of common stock related to exercise of warrants                                               | 3,330                                  |                   |                    |
| Proceeds from issuance of common stock related to exercise of common stock options                                   | 9,075                                  | 7,011             | 1,689              |
| Proceeds from issuance of common stock related to employee stock purchase plan                                       | 2,792                                  | 2,922             | 2,409              |
| Payment of redemption of convertible notes payable                                                                   |                                        |                   | (4,250)            |
| Treasury Stock - repurchase of stock for tax withholding                                                             | (570)                                  |                   |                    |
| Net cash provided by financing activities                                                                            | \$ 78,525                              | \$ 5,433          | \$ 4,348           |
| <b>NET INCREASE (DECREASE) IN CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS</b>                                                          | <b>\$ 3,781</b>                        | <b>\$ (1,947)</b> | <b>\$ (50,965)</b> |



**Table of Contents****TIVO INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS (CONTINUED)****(In thousands)**

|                                                                                                                                           | <b>Twelve Months Ended<br/>January 31,</b> |             |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
|                                                                                                                                           | <b>2007</b>                                | <b>2006</b> | <b>2005</b> |
| <b>CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS:</b>                                                                                                         |                                            |             |             |
| Balance at beginning of period                                                                                                            | 85,298                                     | 87,245      | 138,210     |
| Balance at end of period                                                                                                                  | \$ 89,079                                  | \$ 85,298   | \$ 87,245   |
| <b>SUPPLEMENTAL DISCLOSURE OF CASH AND NON-CASH FLOW INFORMATION</b>                                                                      |                                            |             |             |
| Cash paid for interest                                                                                                                    | \$ 51                                      | \$ 14       | \$ 608      |
| Cash paid for income taxes                                                                                                                | 52                                         | 64          | 134         |
| <b>SUPPLEMENTAL DISCLOSURE OF OTHER NON-CASH INVESTING AND FINANCING<br/>INFORMATION</b>                                                  |                                            |             |             |
| Conversion of convertible notes payable to common stock, \$3.99 per shares                                                                |                                            |             | 6,200       |
| Issuance of common stock for purchase of patent rights                                                                                    |                                            |             | 306         |
| Adjustment to deferred compensation as a result of retirement due to forfeiture of unvested restricted<br>common stock                    |                                            | 625         | 144         |
| Issuance of restricted common stock                                                                                                       |                                            | 2,934       |             |
| Reversal of unamortized deferred compensation and additional paid-in capital related to prior year issuance<br>of restricted common stock | 2,421                                      |             |             |
| Deferred compensation recorded from acceleration of stock option vesting                                                                  |                                            | 70          |             |
| Deferred compensation recorded from the issuance of stock options at option price at less than fair market<br>value                       |                                            |             | 300         |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

## **Table of Contents**

### **TIVO INC.**

### **NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

#### **1. NATURE OF OPERATIONS**

TiVo Inc. (together with its subsidiaries the Company or TiVo ) was incorporated in August 1997 as a Delaware corporation and is located in Alviso, California. On August 21, 2000, TiVo (UK) Limited, a wholly owned subsidiary of TiVo Inc., was incorporated in the United Kingdom. On October 9, 2001, the Company formed a subsidiary, TiVo International, Inc., also a Delaware corporation. On July 16, 2004, TiVo Intl. II, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of TiVo Inc., was incorporated in the Cayman Islands. On March 22, 2005, TiVo Brands LLC, a wholly owned subsidiary of TiVo Inc., was incorporated in the State of Delaware as a holding entity for all of the Company's trademarks. The Company conducts its operations through one reportable segment. TiVo is a provider of technology and services for digital video recorders (DVRs). The subscription-based TiVo service (the TiVo service ) improves home entertainment by providing consumers with an easy way to record, watch, and control television. TiVo also provides a unique platform for the television industry, including for advertisers and audience research measurement.

The Company continues to be subject to a number of risks, including delays in product and service developments; competitive service offerings; lack of market acceptance; uncertainty of future profitability; the dependence on third parties for manufacturing, marketing, and sales support; the intellectual property claims against the Company; and dependence on its relationships with third parties such as Comcast, and Cox for subscription growth. The Company anticipates that its business will continue to be seasonal and expects to generate a significant number of its annual new subscriptions during and immediately after the holiday shopping season.

#### **2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

##### **Basis of Presentation**

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its wholly owned subsidiaries. All inter-company accounts and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation.

In June 2004, the DIRECTV's representative on the Company's board of directors resigned from the board and soon thereafter, DIRECTV notified the Company that it sold its equity position in the Company so it no longer held an equity position of 5% or more. Thus, the Company determined DIRECTV no longer met its definition of a related party relationship. Therefore, the Company classified DIRECTV's activities from June 2004 forward as non-related party activities. The Company determined that no change to DIRECTV's related party classification for prior periods was required as during that time DIRECTV was in a position to significantly influence the Company's management and operation expenses. For the period from February 1, 2004 to May 31, 2004, \$6.8 million of the total service revenues and technology revenues was generated from DIRECTV.

##### **Use of Estimates**

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the financial statements and accompanying notes. The estimates and judgments affect the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses, and related disclosure of contingent liabilities. On an on-going basis, the Company evaluates its estimates, including those related to customer programs and incentives, product returns, inventories and related reserves, warranty obligations, contingencies, stock compensation and litigation. The Company bases estimates on historical experience and on other assumptions that its management believes are reasonable under the circumstances. These estimates form the basis for making judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities when those values are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results could differ from these estimates.

##### **Cash and Cash Equivalents**

Cash and cash equivalents include all highly liquid investments with insignificant interest rate risk and original maturities of three months or less. The carrying value of the cash and cash equivalents approximates fair value.

##### **Short-term Investments**

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

Short-term investments are classified as available-for-sale and are carried at fair value. The Company's short-term investments are reviewed each reporting period for declines in value that are

**Table of Contents**

considered to be other-than temporary and, if appropriate, the investments are written down to their estimated fair value. Realized gains and losses and declines in value judged to be other-than-temporary on available-for-sale securities are included in the Company's consolidated statements of operations. Unrealized gains and unrealized losses deemed temporary are included in other comprehensive income (loss). The cost of securities sold is based on the specific identification method. Interest and dividends on securities classified as available-for-sale are included in interest income in the consolidated statements of operations.

**Allowance for doubtful accounts**

TiVo also maintains an allowance for doubtful accounts to reserve for potentially uncollectible trade receivables. The Company reviews its trade receivable by aging category to identify significant customers with known disputes or collection issues. For accounts not specifically identified, the Company provides reserves based on the age of the receivable. In determining the reserve, the Company makes judgments about the credit-worthiness of significant customers based on ongoing credit evaluations. TiVo also considers its historical level of credit losses and current economic trends that might impact the level of future credit losses.

|                                  | Beginning<br>Balance | Charged to<br>Operating<br>Expenses | Deductions(*) | Ending<br>Balance |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| Allowance for doubtful accounts: |                      |                                     |               |                   |
| Year Ended:                      |                      |                                     |               |                   |
| January 31, 2007                 | \$ 56                | \$ 718                              | \$ (503)      | \$ 271            |
| January 31, 2006                 | 104                  | 373                                 | (421)         | \$ 56             |
| January 31, 2005                 | 17                   | 248                                 | (161)         | \$ 104            |

(\*) Deductions related to the allowance for doubtful accounts represent amounts written off against the allowance, less recoveries.

**Inventories and Inventory Valuation**

Inventories consist primarily of finished DVR units and are stated at the lower of cost or market on an aggregate basis, with cost determined using the first-in, first-out method. The Company performs a detailed assessment of excess and obsolete inventory and purchase commitments at each balance sheet date, which includes a review of, among other factors, demand requirements and market conditions. Based on this analysis, the Company records adjustments, when appropriate, to reflect inventory of finished products and materials on hand at lower of cost or market and to reserve for products and materials which are not forecasted to be used in future production. As of January 31, 2007, the Company had impaired \$2.0 million in inventory and reserved approximately \$500,000 for excess non-cancelable purchase commitments. Should actual market conditions differ from the Company's estimates, the Company's future results of operations could be materially affected.

**Property and Equipment**

Property and equipment are stated at cost less depreciation. Maintenance and repair expenditures are expensed as incurred.

Depreciation is computed using the straight-line method over estimated useful lives as follows:

|                                       |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Furniture and fixture                 | 3-5 years                                       |
| Computer and office equipment         | 3-5 years                                       |
| Lab equipment                         | 3 years                                         |
| Leasehold improvements                | The shorter of 4 years or the term of the lease |
| Capitalized software for internal use | 1-5 years                                       |

## **Table of Contents**

### **Capitalized Software**

Costs of computer software to be sold, leased or otherwise marketed have been accounted for in accordance with Statements of Financial Accounting Standards (SFAS) No. 86, Accounting for the Costs of Computer Software to Be Sold, Leased, or Otherwise Marketed. The Company achieves technological feasibility upon development of a working model. The period between the development of a working model and the release of the final product to customers is short, and, therefore, the development costs incurred during this short period are immaterial and, as such, are not capitalized.

The Company accounts for costs related to internally-developed software and software purchased for internal use in accordance with the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants ( AICPA ) Statement of Position ( SOP ) No. 98-1 Accounting for Cost of Computer Software Developed or Obtained for Internal Use. In accordance with SOP 98-1, software development costs incurred as part of an approved project plan that result in additional functionality to internal use software are capitalized and amortized on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life of the software, between one and five years.

### **Intangible Assets**

Purchased intangible assets include intellectual property such as patent rights carried at cost less accumulated amortization. Useful lives generally range from five to seven years.

### **Revenue Recognition and Deferred Revenue**

The Company generates service revenues from fees for providing the TiVo service to consumers and through the sale of advertising and audience research measurement services. The Company also generates technology revenues from licensing software and providing engineering professional services. In addition, the Company generates hardware revenues from the sale of hardware products that enable the TiVo service.

**Service Revenues.** Included in service revenues are revenues from recurring and prepaid subscription plans to the TiVo service and fees received from the sale of advertising and audience research measurement services. Monthly and prepaid fixed-length subscription revenues are recognized over the period the service is provided. Subscription revenues from product lifetime subscriptions are recognized ratably over a four-year period, which is the Company's estimate of the useful life of a TiVo-enabled DVR. End users have the right to cancel their subscription within 30 days of the activation. TiVo establishes allowances for expected subscription cancellations. Also included in service revenues are fees received from third parties, such as DIRECTV, which are recognized as earned.

**Technology Revenues.** The Company recognizes technology revenues under technology license and engineering services agreements in accordance with the SOP 97-2, Software Revenue Recognition, as amended. For each arrangement, the Company determines whether evidence of an arrangement exists, delivery has occurred, the fee is fixed or determinable and collection is probable. If any of these criteria are not met, revenue recognition is deferred until such time as all of the criteria are met. Elements included in the Company's arrangements may include technology licenses and associated maintenance and support, engineering services and other services. Under SOP 97-2, vendor specific objective evidence ( VSOE ) of fair value is required for all undelivered elements in order to recognize revenue related to the delivered element. The timing of revenue recognition related to these transactions will depend, in part, on whether the Company can establish VSOE for undelivered elements and on how these transactions are structured. As such, revenue recognition may not correspond to the timing of related cash flows or the Company's work effort.

In arrangements which include engineering services that are essential to the functionality of the software or involve significant customization or modification of the software, the Company

---

**Table of Contents**

recognizes revenue using the percentage-of-completion method, as described in SOP 81-1 Accounting for Performance of Construction-Type and Certain Production-Type Contracts, if the Company believes it is able to make reasonably dependable estimates of the extent of progress toward completion. The Company measures progress toward completion using an input method based on the ratio of costs incurred, principally labor, to date to total estimated costs of the project. These estimates are assessed continually during the term of the contract, and revisions are reflected when the changed conditions become known. In some cases, the Company accepted engineering services contracts that were expected to be losses at the time of acceptance in order to gain experience in developing new technology that could be used in future products and services. Provisions for losses on contracts are recorded when estimates indicate that a loss will be incurred on a contract. In some cases, it may not be possible to separate the various elements within the arrangement due to a lack of VSOE for undelivered elements in the contract. In these situations, provided that the Company is reasonably assured that no loss will be incurred under the arrangement, the Company recognizes revenues and costs based on a zero profit model, which results in the recognition of equal amounts of revenues and costs, until the engineering professional services are complete. Thereafter, any remaining revenue is recognized over the period of the maintenance and support or other services that are provided.

**Hardware Revenues.** For product sales to distributors, revenues are recognized upon product shipment to the distributors or receipt of the products by the distributor, depending on the shipping terms, provided that all fees are fixed or determinable, evidence of an arrangement exists and collectibility is reasonably assured. End users have the right to return their product within 30 days of the purchase. TiVo establishes allowances for expected product returns in accordance with SFAS No. 48, Revenue Recognition When Right of Return Exists. These allowances are recorded as a direct reduction of revenues and accounts receivable. For direct product sales to end-users prior to March 15, 2006, hardware revenues were recognized upon shipment by TiVo to the end-users provided all appropriate revenue recognition criteria were met. After March 15, 2006, the Company began selling DVRs and service directly to end-users through Bundled Sales Programs see Bundled Sales Programs.

**Bundled Sales Programs.** Prior to March 15, 2006, the Company sold DVRs directly to end-users for no cost or at a substantial discount when bundled with a gift subscription contract under certain marketing or promotion programs. These were considered multiple element arrangements, which met the requirements for separation under Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF) 00-21, Revenue Arrangements with Multiple Deliverables. The prepaid fee was allocated to the hardware and service based on their relative fair values and recognized in accordance with the respective accounting policies stated above.

Beginning on March 15, 2006, the Company began selling the DVR and service directly to end-users through bundled sales programs through the TiVo website. Under these bundled programs, the customer receives a DVR and commits to a minimum subscription of one to three years. Unlike the bundled sales programs offered prior to March 15, 2006, the customer receives a TiVo DVR and has the option to either pay a monthly fee over the subscription term (monthly program) or to prepay the subscription fee in advance (prepaid program). After the initial committed subscription term, the customer has various pricing options at which they can renew the subscription. During the quarter ended April 30, 2006, these bundled sale programs did not meet the requirements for separation under EITF 00-21 because the Company did not have fair value for the undelivered subscription element. As a result, for both the monthly and prepaid programs, revenue was recognized ratably over the subscription period and was classified as Service Revenue in the accompanying consolidated statements of operations. However, as of the quarter ended July 31, 2006, the bundled sales programs had met the requirements for separation under EITF 00-21 since TiVo had sufficient data to support fair value for the subscription element in the arrangement. As a result, for these programs or for monthly packages with a hardware upgrade fee, revenue is now allocated to the DVR (limited to the extent of the non-contingent amount) and subscription based on the residual value method, with the DVR revenue recognized upon delivery and the subscription revenue being initially deferred and recognized over the term of the service commitment.

## **Table of Contents**

For the monthly programs introduced on March 15, 2006, the Company concluded it was appropriate to charge the related hardware costs to cost of hardware revenues upon shipment of the DVR. Effective February 1, 2006, the Company changed its accounting policy for the recognition of DVR costs for prepaid bundled sales arrangements to charge the entire cost of the hardware to cost of revenues upon shipment. Previously, the Company deferred the portion of the hardware costs exceeding the recognized revenue allocated to the hardware element and amortized such costs over the period of the subscription. All prior periods were adjusted to reflect this change in this accounting policy. See Change in Accounting Policy section below.

**Rebates, Revenue Share, and Other Payments to Channel.** In accordance with EITF 01-09, Accounting for Consideration Given by a Vendor to a Customer (Including a Reseller of the Vendor's Products), certain payments to retailers and distributors such as market development funds and revenue share are shown as a reduction of revenue rather than as a sales and marketing expense. TiVo's policy is to reduce revenue when these payments are incurred and fixed or determinable. The Company also records rebates offered to consumers as a reduction to revenue. The Company adjusts its rebate liability periodically for changes in redemption rates, changes in duration and amounts of rebate programs and channel inventory quantities subject to such changes.

**Deferred Revenues.** Deferred revenues consists of unrecognized service and technology fees that have been collected, but the related service has not yet been provided or unrecognized fees received under multiple-element arrangements in which VSOE of fair value does not exist for the undelivered elements of an arrangement.

### **Change in Accounting Policy**

#### **Recognition of Hardware Costs and Bundled Sales Programs**

Effective February 1, 2006, the Company changed its method of accounting for the recognition of hardware costs in bundled sales programs where the customer prepaids the arrangement fee. Previously, to the extent that the cost of the DVR exceeded the revenue allocated to the DVR, the excess costs were deferred and amortized over the period of the subscription. In this prepayment plan, the Company received the cash upfront from consumers, which allowed the Company to elect deferral of hardware costs over the service period. The Company now expenses all hardware costs upon shipment of the DVR (direct expense method).

The Company determined that the direct expense method was preferable to the prior accounting method because the Company believes: it is consistent with the accounting practices of competitors and companies within similar industries; it adds to the clarity and ease of understanding of the Company's reported results to investors; and it is consistent with the recognition of hardware costs for bundled monthly sales programs. The Company recorded the change in method of accounting in accordance with Statement of Financial Accounting Standards (SFAS) No. 154, Accounting Changes and Error Corrections. SFAS 154 requires that all elective accounting changes be made on a retrospective basis. The impact of adopting the direct expense method resulted in approximately \$700,000 increase to net loss for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007. The tables below detail the impact of this accounting policy change on the Company's fiscal year ended January 31, 2006 consolidated financial statements by effected line items, which were filed on July 21, 2006, on a current report on Form 8-K.

**Table of Contents****Consolidated Balance Sheets**

|                                          | July 31, 2005                |            |          | October 31, 2005             |            |          | January 31, 2006             |            |          |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------|----------|------------------------------|------------|----------|------------------------------|------------|----------|
|                                          | As<br>previously<br>reported | Adjustment | Adjusted | As<br>previously<br>reported | Adjustment | Adjusted | As<br>previously<br>reported | Adjustment | Adjusted |
| Prepaid expenses and other,<br>current   | \$ 4,860                     | \$ (810)   | \$ 4,050 | \$ 8,019                     | \$ (761)   | \$ 7,258 | \$ 11,069                    | \$ (2,325) | \$ 8,744 |
| Total current assets                     | 137,843                      | (810)      | 137,033  | 149,249                      | (761)      | 148,488  | 146,332                      | (2,325)    | 144,007  |
| Prepaid expenses and other,<br>long-term | \$ 1,009                     | \$ (322)   | \$ 687   | \$ 752                       | \$ (296)   | \$ 456   | \$ 623                       | \$ (276)   | \$ 347   |
| Total long-term assets                   | 14,521                       | \$ (322)   | 14,199   | 13,984                       | \$ (296)   | 13,688   | 15,277                       | \$ (276)   | 15,001   |
| Total assets                             | 152,364                      | \$ (1,132) | 151,232  | 163,233                      | \$ (1,057) | 162,176  | 161,609                      | \$ (2,601) | 159,008  |

**Consolidated Statements of Operations**

|                                                      | Three Months Ended<br>July 31, 2005 |            |           | Three Months Ended<br>October 31, 2005 |            |             | Three Months Ended<br>January 31, 2006 |            |             | Fiscal Year Ended<br>January 31, 2006 |            |             |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------|-----------|----------------------------------------|------------|-------------|----------------------------------------|------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|------------|-------------|
|                                                      | As<br>previously<br>reported        | Adjustment | Adjusted  | As<br>previously<br>reported           | Adjustment | Adjusted    | As<br>previously<br>reported           | Adjustment | Adjusted    | As<br>previously<br>reported          | Adjustment | Adjusted    |
| <b>Cost of revenues</b>                              |                                     |            |           |                                        |            |             |                                        |            |             |                                       |            |             |
| Cost of hardware revenues                            | \$ 6,565                            | \$ 1,132   | \$ 7,697  | \$ 24,742                              | \$ (75)    | \$ 24,667   | \$ 37,267                              | \$ 1,544   | \$ 38,811   | \$ 84,216                             | \$ 2,601   | \$ 86,817   |
| Total cost of revenues                               | 14,023                              | 1,132      | 15,155    | 33,250                                 | (75)       | 33,175      | 47,396                                 | 1,544      | 48,940      | 119,177                               | 2,601      | 121,778     |
| Gross margin                                         | 25,312                              | (1,132)    | 24,180    | 16,365                                 | 75         | 16,440      | 12,671                                 | (1,544)    | 11,127      | 76,748                                | (2,601)    | 74,147      |
| <b>Loss from operations</b>                          | (449)                               | (1,132)    | (1,581)   | (15,055)                               | 75         | (14,980)    | (20,428)                               | (1,544)    | (21,972)    | (37,404)                              | (2,601)    | (40,005)    |
| <b>Income (loss) before income taxes</b>             | 283                                 | (1,132)    | (849)     | (14,239)                               | 75         | (14,164)    | (19,529)                               | (1,544)    | (21,073)    | (34,334)                              | (2,601)    | (36,935)    |
| <b>Net income (loss)</b>                             | \$ 240                              | \$ (1,132) | \$ (892)  | \$ (14,239)                            | \$ 75      | \$ (14,164) | \$ (19,542)                            | \$ (1,544) | \$ (21,086) | \$ (34,398)                           | \$ (2,601) | \$ (36,999) |
| Net Income (loss) per common share basic and diluted | \$ 0.00                             | \$ 0.01    | \$ (0.01) | \$ (0.17)                              | \$ 0.00    | \$ (0.17)   | \$ (0.23)                              | \$ (0.02)  | \$ (0.25)   | \$ (0.41)                             | \$ (0.03)  | \$ (0.44)   |

**Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows**Six Months Ended  
July 31, 2005Nine Months Ended  
October 31, 2005Fiscal Year Ended  
January 31, 2006

Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

|                                                                                   | As<br>previously<br>reported | Adjustment | Adjusted   | As<br>previously<br>reported | Adjustment | Adjusted    | As<br>previously<br>reported | Adjustment | Adjusted    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------|------------|------------------------------|------------|-------------|------------------------------|------------|-------------|
| <b>CASH FLOWS FROM<br/>OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>                                   |                              |            |            |                              |            |             |                              |            |             |
| Net loss                                                                          | \$ (617)                     | \$ (1,132) | \$ (1,749) | \$ (14,856)                  | \$ (1,057) | \$ (15,913) | \$ (34,398)                  | \$ (2,601) | \$ (36,999) |
| Adjustments to reconcile net<br>loss to net cash used in<br>operating activities: |                              |            |            |                              |            |             |                              |            |             |
| Prepaid expenses and other,<br>current                                            | (384)                        | 810        | 426        | (3,543)                      | 761        | (2,782)     | (6,593)                      | 2,325      | (4,268)     |
| Prepaid expenses and other,<br>long-term                                          | 229                          | 322        | 551        | 486                          | 296        | 782         | 615                          | 276        | 891         |
| Net cash used in operating<br>activities                                          | (6,577)                      |            | (6,577)    | (12,262)                     |            | (12,262)    | 3,425                        |            | 3,425       |

## **Table of Contents**

### **Stock-Based Compensation**

The Company has equity incentive plans and an Employee Stock Purchase Plan ( ESPP ), under which officers, employees, consultants, and non-employee directors may be granted options to purchase shares of the Company's authorized but unissued or reacquired common stock, and may also be granted restricted stock, performance based stock options and other stock awards. Currently, the Company grants options from (1) the 1999 Equity Incentive Plan, under which options could be granted to all employees, including executive officers; and (2) the 1999 Non-Employee Directors' Stock Option Plan, under which options are granted automatically to non-employee directors. In addition, TiVo's stock option program includes the 1997 Equity Incentive Plan, from which the Company currently does not grant options, but may do so. Upon the exercise of options, the Company issues new common stock from its authorized shares.

On February 1, 2006, the Company adopted the provisions of SFAS 123R, "Share-Based Payment", requiring TiVo to recognize expense related to the fair value of the Company's stock-based compensation awards. SFAS No. 123R eliminates the option to account for stock-based compensation transactions with employees using the intrinsic value method under Accounting Principle Board (APB) Opinion No. 25, "Accounting for Stock Issued to Employees", and instead requires that such transactions be accounted for using a fair-value based method.

TiVo elected to use the modified prospective transition method as permitted by SFAS 123R and therefore has not restated the Company's financial results for prior periods. Under this transition method, stock-based compensation expense for the year ended January 31, 2007 includes compensation expense for all stock-based compensation awards granted prior to, but not yet vested as of February 1, 2006, based on the grant date fair value estimated in accordance with the original provisions of SFAS 123. Stock-based compensation expense for all stock-based compensation awards granted or modified subsequent to February 1, 2006 was based on the grant-date fair value estimated in accordance with the provisions of SFAS 123R.

The fair value of TiVo's restricted stock awards is calculated based on the fair market value of the Company's stock at the grant date. The fair value of TiVo's stock options and ESPP awards is estimated using a Black-Scholes option valuation model. TiVo recognizes compensation expense for stock option awards on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period of the award.

### **Research and Development**

Research and development expenses, which consist primarily of employee salaries, related expenses, and consulting fees, are expensed as incurred.

### **Sales and Marketing**

Sales and marketing expenses consist primarily of employee salaries and related expenses, media advertising, public relations activities, special promotions, trade shows, and the production of product related items, including collateral and videos.

### **Advertising Costs**

The Company expenses advertising costs related to its products and service as incurred. Marketing co-op development payments, where the Company receives, or will receive, an identifiable benefit (goods or services) in exchange for the amount paid to its customer, and the Company can reasonably estimate the fair value of the benefit it receives, are classified as marketing expense. All other marketing co-op development payments are classified as Rebates, revenue share, and other payments to the channel. Advertising expenses were \$15.9 million, \$10.4 million, and \$16.1 million for the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively. Included in these advertising expenses are \$12.8 million, \$7.9 million, and \$13.7 million, respectively, related to media placement costs.

### **Warranty Expense and Liability**

The Company accrues for the expected material and labor costs required to provide warranty services on its hardware products. The Company's warranty reserve liability is calculated as the total volume of unit sales over the warranty period, multiplied by the expected rate of warranty returns (based on historical experience) multiplied by the estimated cost to replace or repair the customers' product returns under warranty.

### **Interest Expense and Other**

Included in interest expense for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005, are cash charges for coupon interest expense related to the convertible notes payable. Also included in interest expense for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005 is amortization of discount on the convertible notes

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

payable and debt issuance costs. Other expenses include fees for the bank line of credit and the letter of credit.

### **Income Taxes**

The Company accounts for income taxes in accordance with SFAS No. 109, Accounting for Income Taxes. The Company considers future taxable income and ongoing prudent and feasible tax planning strategies in assessing the amount of the valuation allowance. In light of the Company's history of operating losses, the Company recorded a valuation allowance for all of its net deferred tax assets, as the Company is presently unable to conclude that it is more likely than not that the deferred tax assets in excess of deferred tax liabilities will be realized. Adjustments may be required in the future if it is determined that the amount of deferred tax assets to be realized is greater than the amount recorded.

### **Comprehensive Loss**

The Company has no material components of other comprehensive income or loss and, accordingly, the comprehensive loss is the same as the net loss for all periods presented.

### **Fair Value of Financial Instruments**

Carrying amounts of certain of the Company's financial instruments including cash and cash equivalents, accounts receivable, accounts payable, and accrued expenses approximate their fair value because of their short maturities. Available-for-sale marketable securities are reported at their fair value based on quoted market prices.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Business Concentrations and Credit Risk**

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to a concentration of credit risk principally consist of cash, cash equivalents, short-term investments, and trade receivables. The Company currently invests the majority of its cash in money market funds and maintains them with several financial institutions with high credit ratings. The Company also invests in auction rate securities. As part of its cash management process, the Company performs periodic evaluations of the relative credit ratings of these financial institutions. The Company has not experienced any credit losses on its cash, cash equivalents, or short-term investments.

The majority of the Company's customers are concentrated in the United States. The Company is subject to a minimal amount of credit risk related to service revenue contracts as these are primarily obtained through credit card sales. DIRECTV represented approximately 10%, 14%, and 12% of net revenues and 22%, 24%, and 13% of net accounts receivable for the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively. The Company sells its TiVo-enabled DVR to retailers under customary credit terms and generally requires no collateral. One retailer generated 12%, 29%, and 16% of the Company's net revenues and 18%, 19%, and 48% of the net accounts receivable for the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively. The Company is dependent on sole suppliers for several key components, assemblies, and services. The Company has an agreement with Tribune Media Services, the sole supplier of the Company's programming guide data for the TiVo service. The Company does not have a long-term written supply agreement with Broadcom, the sole supplier of the MPEG2 encoder and decoder semiconductor devices. In instances where a supply agreement does not exist and suppliers fail to perform their obligations, the Company may be unable to find alternative suppliers or deliver its products and services to its customers on time, if at all.

The TiVo service is enabled through the use of a DVR manufactured for TiVo by a third-party contract manufacturer and a limited number of other third parties. The Company also relies on third parties with whom we outsource supply-chain activities related to inventory warehousing, order fulfillment, distribution, and other direct sales logistics. The Company cannot be sure that these parties will perform their obligations as expected or that any revenue, cost savings, or other benefits will be derived from the efforts of these parties. If any of these parties breaches or terminates their agreement with TiVo or otherwise fails to perform their obligations in a timely manner, the Company may be delayed or prevented from commercializing our products and services.

### **Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

In September 2006, the SEC released Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 108, "Considering the Effects of Prior Year Misstatements when Quantifying Misstatements in Current Year Financial Statements" (SAB 108). SAB 108 provides interpretive guidance on the SEC's views regarding the process of quantifying materiality of financial statement misstatements. SAB 108 is effective for fiscal years ending after November 15, 2006. The adoption of SAB 108 did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In September 2006, the FASB issued Statement No. 157, "Fair Value Measurements" (SFAS 157). SFAS 157 defines fair value, establishes a framework and gives guidance regarding the methods used for measuring fair value, and expands disclosures about fair value measurements. SFAS 157 is effective for financial statements issued for fiscal years beginning after November 15, 2007, and interim periods within those fiscal years. The Company is currently evaluating the impact of adopting SFAS 157 on its consolidated financial statements.

In June 2006, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) issued FASB Interpretation No. 48 (FIN 48), "Accounting for Uncertainty in Income Taxes" an interpretation of FASB Statement No. 109. The interpretation contains a two-step approach to recognizing and measuring uncertain tax positions accounted for in accordance with SFAS No. 109. The first step is to evaluate the tax position for recognition by determining if the weight of available evidence indicates it is more likely than not that the position will be sustained on audit, including resolution of related appeals or litigation processes, if any. The second step is to measure the tax benefit as the largest amount which is more

**Table of Contents**

than 50% likely of being realized upon ultimate settlement. FIN 48 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2006, which will be the Company's fiscal year 2008, and is required to be recognized as a change in accounting principle through a cumulative-effect adjustment to retained earnings as of the beginning of the year of adoption. The Company expects that the adoption of FIN 48 will not have a significant impact on the Company's financial position and results of operations.

In June 2006, the FASB ratified the provisions of Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF) Issue No. 06-3, How Taxes Collected from Customers and Remitted to Governmental Authorities Should Be Presented in the Income Statement (That Is, Gross versus Net Presentation). EITF Issue No. 06-3 requires that companies adopt a policy to present taxes within revenue-producing transactions between a seller and a customer, including but not limited to sales, use, value added, and some excise taxes, on either a gross (included in revenue and cost) or a net (excluded from revenue) basis. In addition, for any such taxes that are reported on a gross basis, a company should disclose the amounts of those taxes in interim and annual financial statements for each period for which an income statement is presented if those amounts are significant. The disclosure of those taxes can be done on an aggregate basis. EITF Issue No. 06-3 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2006, which will be the Company's fiscal year 2008. EITF 06-3 will not impact the method for recording these sales taxes in the Company's consolidated financial statements as the Company has historically presented sales excluding all taxes and the Company currently has no plan to change its method of revenue reporting.

**3. CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS AND SHORT-TERM INVESTMENTS**

The following table summarizes the amortized value of the Company's cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments that approximates their fair value as of January 31, 2007 and 2006 (in thousands):

|                                                             | <b>As of January 31,</b> |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|
|                                                             | <b>2007</b>              | <b>2006</b> |
| Cash                                                        | \$ 7,527                 | \$ 7,711    |
| Money market funds                                          | 63,614                   | 72,504      |
| U.S. corporate debt securities                              | 17,938                   | 5,083       |
| <br>Total cash and cash equivalents                         | <br>89,079               | <br>85,298  |
| Auction rate securities                                     | 33,810                   | 16,350      |
| Commercial paper                                            | 5,876                    | 2,565       |
| <br>Total short-term investments                            | <br>39,686               | <br>18,915  |
| Total cash and cash equivalents, and short-term investments | \$ 128,765               | \$ 104,213  |

The Company's short-term investment portfolio consists of investments in U.S. corporate debt securities and U.S. Treasury and Agency securities which are auction rate securities and considered available-for-sale. Realized and unrealized gains and losses on available-for-sale securities were immaterial for all periods presented. As of January 31, 2007 and 2006, all of the Company's U.S. Treasury and Agency securities had underlying maturities over 10 years. During the years ended January 31, 2007 and 2006, the Company sold securities generating gross proceeds of \$7.9 million and \$15.7 million, respectively.

**Table of Contents****4. PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT, NET**

Property and equipment, net consists of the following:

|                                                 | January 31, 2007 | January 31, 2006 |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
|                                                 | (In thousands)   |                  |
| Furniture and fixtures                          | \$ 3,414         | \$ 3,285         |
| Computer and office equipment                   | 17,465           | 20,946           |
| Lab equipment                                   | 2,100            | 2,392            |
| Leasehold improvements                          | 7,900            | 6,319            |
| Capitalized internal use software               | 11,345           | 9,926            |
| Total property and equipment                    | 42,224           | 42,868           |
| Less: accumulated depreciation and amortization | (30,518)         | (33,420)         |
| Property and equipment, net                     | \$ 11,706        | \$ 9,448         |

**5. PURCHASED TECHNOLOGY, CAPITALIZED SOFTWARE, AND INTANGIBLE ASSETS, NET**

Purchased technology, capitalized software, and intangible assets, net consists of the following:

|                                                                   | Gross     | January 31, 2007<br>Accumulated<br>Amortization | Net<br>(In thousands) | Gross    | January 31, 2006<br>Accumulated<br>Amortization | Net      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Purchased technology                                              | \$ 1,500  | \$ (333)                                        | \$ 1,167              | \$       | \$                                              | \$       |
| Capitalized software                                              | 1,951     | (807)                                           | \$ 1,144              | 1,951    | (404)                                           | \$ 1,547 |
| Intellectual property rights                                      | 16,265    | (1,807)                                         | \$ 14,458             | 4,265    | (606)                                           | \$ 3,659 |
| Purchased technology, capitalized software, and intangible assets | \$ 19,716 | \$ (2,947)                                      | \$ 16,769             | \$ 6,216 | \$ (1,010)                                      | \$ 5,206 |

In September 2006, the Company entered into a cross-licensing agreement with IBM under which each party granted to the other a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free license to such party's patents that are entitled to a priority date on or before September 28, 2006, including all patents and patent applications in existence as of that date with limited exceptions. The license granted by IBM to the Company extends to all products other than general purpose data processing products and data storage devices that are primarily sold separately from other hardware. The license that the Company granted to IBM extends to all products other than digital media recorders and digital media recorder software. No license was granted, directly or by implication, to permit the combination of any product with any other item. This license is being amortized over the period of its estimated benefit period of 7 years.

The total expected future annual amortization expense related to purchased technology, capitalized software, and intangible assets is calculated on a straight-line basis, using the useful lives of the assets, which range from three to five years for purchased technology and capitalized software and five to seven years for intellectual property rights. Amortization expense for the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006 and 2005 was \$1.9 million, \$940,000, and \$70,000, respectively. Estimated future annual amortization expense is set forth in the table below:

| Fiscal Year Ending | Estimated Annual<br>Amortization<br>Expense<br>(In thousands) |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| January 31, 2008   | 3,247                                                         |
| January 31, 2009   | 3,214                                                         |

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

|                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| January 31, 2010 | 2,810         |
| January 31, 2011 | 2,274         |
| January 31, 2012 | 2,274         |
| There after      | 2,950         |
| <br>Total        | <br>\$ 16,769 |

**Table of Contents****6. ACCRUED LIABILITIES**

Accrued liabilities consist of the following:

|                                                | As of January 31,<br>2007      2006<br>(In thousands) |                  |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| Compensation and vacation                      | \$ 5,124                                              | \$ 5,188         |
| Consumer rebates                               | 14,538                                                | 17,248           |
| Marketing and promotions                       | 6,471                                                 | 5,285            |
| Redeemable gift certificates for subscriptions | 2,722                                                 | 1,932            |
| Other                                          | 7,687                                                 | 7,796            |
| Total accrued liabilities                      | <b>\$ 36,542</b>                                      | <b>\$ 37,449</b> |

**7. INDEMNIFICATION ARRANGEMENTS AND GUARANTEES***Product Warranties*

The Company's standard warranty period to consumers for TiVo-enabled DVRs is 90 days from the date of consumer purchase also known as the Limited Warranty. Within the limited warranty period, consumers are offered a no-charge exchange for TiVo-enabled DVRs returned due to product defect, within 90 days from the date of consumer purchase. Thereafter, consumers may exchange a TiVo-enabled DVR with a product defect for a charge. At January 31, 2007 and 2006, the accrued warranty reserve was \$479,000 and \$166,000, respectively. The Company's accrued warranty reserve is included in accrued liabilities in the accompanying consolidated balance sheets.

*Indemnification Arrangements*

The Company undertakes indemnification obligations in its ordinary course of business. For instance, the Company has undertaken to indemnify its underwriters and certain investors in connection with the issuance and sale of its securities. The Company has also undertaken to indemnify certain customers and business partners for, among other things, the licensing of its products, the sale of its DVRs, and the provision of engineering and consulting services. Pursuant to these agreements, the Company may indemnify the other party for certain losses suffered or incurred by the indemnified party in connection with various types of claims, which may include, without limitation, intellectual property infringement, advertising and consumer disclosure laws, certain tax liabilities, negligence and intentional acts in the performance of services and violations of laws, including certain violations of securities laws with respect to underwriters and investors. The term of these indemnification obligations is generally perpetual. The Company's obligation to provide indemnification would arise in the event that a third party filed a claim against one of the parties that was covered by the Company's indemnification obligation. As an example, if a third party sued a customer for intellectual property infringement and the Company agreed to indemnify that customer against such claims, its obligation would be triggered.

The Company is unable to estimate with any reasonable accuracy the liability that may be incurred pursuant to its indemnification obligations. A few of the variables affecting any such assessment include but are not limited to: the nature of the claim asserted; the relative merits of the claim; the financial ability of the party suing the indemnified party to engage in protracted litigation; the number of parties seeking indemnification; the nature and amount of damages claimed by the party suing the indemnified party; and the willingness of such party to engage in settlement negotiations. During the period of calendar year 2002 through 2006, the Company incurred legal fees in the amount of \$6.1 million in connection with the indemnification and defense of a claim against one of its manufacturers of which approximately \$50,000 was related to fiscal year 2007. However, that indemnification obligation was not typical of the Company's indemnity liability and does not necessarily provide a reasonable measure of liability that may be expected to be incurred pursuant to its indemnification obligations. Due to the nature of the Company's potential indemnity liability, its indemnification obligations could range from immaterial to having a material adverse impact on its financial position and its ability to continue operation in the ordinary course of business.

## **Table of Contents**

Under certain circumstances, the Company may have recourse through its insurance policies that would enable it to recover from its insurance company some or all amounts paid pursuant to its indemnification obligations. The Company does not have any assets held either as collateral or by third parties that, upon the occurrence of an event requiring it to indemnify a customer, the Company could obtain and liquidate to recover all or a portion of the amounts paid pursuant to its indemnification obligations.

## **8. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES**

### **Legal Matters**

**Intellectual Property Litigation.** On January 5, 2004, TiVo filed a complaint against EchoStar Communications Corporation in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Texas alleging willful and deliberate infringement of U.S. Patent No. 6,233,389, entitled "Multimedia Time Warping System." On January 15, 2004, the Company amended its complaint to add EchoStar DBS Corporation, EchoStar Technologies Corporation, and Echosphere Limited Liability Corporation as additional defendants. The Company alleges that it is the owner of this patent, and further alleges that the defendants have willfully and deliberately infringed this patent by making, selling, offering to sell and/or selling digital video recording devices, digital video recording device software, and/or personal television services in the United States. On April 13, 2006, the jury rendered a verdict in favor of the Company in the amount of approximately \$74.0 million dollars. The jury ruled that the Company's patent is valid and that all nine of the asserted claims in the Company's patent are infringed by each of the accused EchoStar products. The jury also ruled that the defendants willfully infringed the patent. On May 16, 2006, the United States Patent and Trademark Office ( "USPTO" ) issued its first Office Action in response to a request by the defendants for reexamination of the 389 patent. The USPTO reexamined all 61 claims set forth in the 389 patent, confirming the validity of the majority of the claims, including two of the claims that the defendants have been found to have willfully infringed, and rejecting some of the claims. TiVo intends to vigorously defend the validity of the rejected claims. On August 17, 2006, the Court denied the defendants' remaining defenses, and granted TiVo's motion for permanent injunction to prevent EchoStar Communications Corporation from making, using, offering for sale or selling in the United States the following EchoStar DVRs: DP-501, DP-508, DP-510, DP-721, DP-921, DP-522, DP-625, DP-942, and all EchoStar Communications Corporation DVRs that are not more than colorably different from any of these products. The Court also ordered ECC to pay TiVo approximately \$74.0 million in damages as awarded by the jury, prejudgment interest at the prime rate through October 31, 2006 of approximately \$5.6 million, and supplemental damages for infringement through October 31, 2006 in the amount of approximately \$10.3 million. The Court denied TiVo's request for enhanced damages and attorney's fees and costs. The Court denied EchoStar's request to stay the injunction pending appeal. On October 3, 2006, the United States Court of Appeals for Federal Circuit stayed the district court's injunction pending appeal. On November 27, 2006, the district court denied all of EchoStar's post-judgment motions. On January 23, 2007, the district court awarded the Company prejudgment interest and supplemental damages from August 1, 2006 through September 8, 2006 in the amounts of approximately \$790,000 and \$3.5 million, respectively. On February 16, 2007, the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit required EchoStar to file its opening brief by April 18, 2007. The Company is incurring material expenses in this litigation. The Company has not recorded any gain from this patent victory as it is still on appeal.

On April 29, 2005, EchoStar Technologies Corporation filed a complaint against TiVo and Humax USA, Inc. in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Texas alleging infringement of U.S. Patent Nos. 5,774,186 ( "Interruption Tolerant Video Program Viewing" ), 6,529,685 B2 ( "Multimedia Direct Access Storage Device and Formatting Method" ), 6,208,804 B1 ( "Multimedia Direct Access Storage Device and Formatting Method" ) and 6,173,112 B1 ( "Method and System for Recording In-Progress Broadcast Programs" ). The complaint alleges that EchoStar Technologies Corporation is the owner by assignment of the patents allegedly infringed. The complaint further alleges that the TiVo and Humax have infringed, contributorily infringed and/or actively induced

## **Table of Contents**

infringement of the patents by making, using, selling or importing digital video recording devices, digital video recording device software and/or personal television services in the United States that allegedly infringe the patents, and that such infringement is willful and ongoing. Under the terms of the Company's agreement with Humax governing the distribution of certain DVRs that enable the TiVo service, the Company is required to indemnify Humax against any claims, damages, liabilities, costs, and expenses relating to claims that the Company's technology infringes upon intellectual property rights owned by third parties. On May 10, 2005, Humax formally notified TiVo of the claims against it in this lawsuit as required by Humax's agreement with TiVo. On July 1, 2005, the defendants filed their answer and counterclaims. On May 10, 2006, the Court dismissed with prejudice, EchoStar's claim of infringement against TiVo and Humax relating to patent 112 ( Method and System for Recording In-Progress Broadcast Programs ) and claims 21-30 and 32 relating to patent 186 ( Interruption Tolerant Video Program Viewing ). A claim construction hearing was held on May 11, 2006. On July 14, 2006, United States Magistrate Judge Caroline M. Craven for the United States District Court, Eastern District of Texas, issued a stay of the case pending the USPTO completion of proceedings with respect to TiVo's request for reexamination of the 186, 685, and 804 patents. The Company intends to defend this action vigorously; however, the Company is incurring material expenses in connection with this lawsuit and in the event there is an adverse outcome, the Company's business could be harmed. No loss is considered probable or estimable at this time.

On August 5, 2004, Compression Labs, Inc. filed a complaint against TiVo Inc., Acer America Corporation, AudioVox Corporation, BancTec, Inc., BenQ America Corporation, Color Dreams, Inc. (d/b/a StarDot Technologies), Google Inc., ScanSoft, Inc., Sun Microsystems Inc., Veo Inc., and Yahoo! Inc. in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Texas alleging infringement, inducement of others to infringe, and contributory infringement of U.S. Patent No. 4,698,672, entitled Coding System For Reducing Redundancy. The complaint alleges that Compression Labs, Inc. is the owner of this patent and has the exclusive rights to sue and recover for infringement thereof. The complaint further alleges that the defendants have infringed, induced infringement, and contributorily infringed this patent by selling devices and/or systems in the United States, at least portions of which are designed to be at least partly compliant with the JPEG standard. On February 16, 2005, the Judicial Panel on Multidistrict Litigation consolidated this and seven other related lawsuits and coordinated pretrial proceedings in the United States District Court for the Northern District of California, where pretrial proceedings are currently ongoing. On January 31, 2006, the USPTO granted a request for reexamination of the patent in question. On May 25, 2006, the USPTO issued its first office action confirming a majority of the claims in the 672 patent, while rejecting some claims. On June 28, 2006, the Court issued a claim construction ruling. In November 2006, the Company and the other defendants entered into an immaterial settlement agreement with Compression Labs under which the claims against the Company were dismissed without prejudice.

On January 3, 2007, Lycos, Inc. filed a complaint against the Company, Netflix, Inc., and Blockbuster, Inc. in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Virginia alleging infringement, inducement of others to infringe, and contributory infringement of U.S. Patent No. 5,867,799, entitled Information System and Method for Filtering a Massive Flow of Information Entities to Meet User Information Classification Needs and U.S. Patent No. 5,983,214, entitled System and Method Employing Individual User Content-Based Data and User Collaboration Feedback Data to Evaluate the Content of an Information Entity in a Large Information Communication Network. The complaint alleges that Lycos, Inc. is the owner of these patents and has the right to sue and recover for infringement thereof. The complaint further alleges that the Company has infringed this patent by making, using, selling, offering to sell and importing digital video recorder products that incorporate information filtering technology. The complaint further alleges that defendants continue to willfully infringe such patents. The Company may incur expenses in connection with this litigation that may become material in the future, and in the event there is an adverse outcome, Company's business could be harmed. No loss is considered probable or estimable at this time.

**Consumer Litigation.** On December 22, 2005, a consumer class action lawsuit against TiVo Inc. was filed in the Superior Court of the State of California, County of San Francisco. This action, which is captioned *Nolz, et al. v. TiVo*, was brought on behalf of a purported class of purchasers of the Company's gift subscriptions which were allegedly sold to consumers in violation of a California

## **Table of Contents**

law that restricts the sale of gift certificates in California containing an expiration date. On March 23, 2007, the Court entered final judgment in the lawsuit approving the Company's settlement agreement with plaintiffs that included no admission or findings of any violations and dismissed the action. The settlement did not have a material effect on the Company's results of operations.

**Securities Litigation.** On June 12, 2001, a securities class action lawsuit in which the Company and certain of its officers and directors are named as defendants was filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. This action, which is captioned *Werberger v. TiVo et al.*, also names several of the underwriters involved in the Company's initial public offering as defendants. This class action was brought on behalf of a purported class of purchasers of the Company's common stock from October 31, 1999, the time of its initial public offering, through December 6, 2000. The central allegation in this action is that the underwriters in the initial public offering solicited and received undisclosed commissions from, and entered into undisclosed arrangements with, certain investors who purchased TiVo common stock in the initial public offering and the after-market. The complaint also alleges that the TiVo defendants violated the federal securities laws by failing to disclose in the initial public offering prospectus that the underwriters had engaged in these alleged arrangements. More than 150 issuers have been named in similar lawsuits. In July 2002, an omnibus motion to dismiss all complaints against issuers and individual defendants affiliated with issuers (including the TiVo defendants) was filed by the entire group of issuer defendants in these similar actions. On October 8, 2002, TiVo's officers were dismissed as defendants in the lawsuit. On February 19, 2003, the court in this action issued its decision on defendants' omnibus motion to dismiss. This decision dismissed the Section 10(b) claim as to TiVo but denied the motion to dismiss the Section 11 claim as to TiVo and virtually all of the other issuer-defendants.

On June 26, 2003, the plaintiffs announced a proposed settlement with the Company and the other issuer defendants. The proposed settlement provides that the plaintiffs will be guaranteed \$1.0 billion dollars in recoveries by the insurers of the Company and other issuer defendants. Accordingly, any direct financial impact of the proposed settlement is expected to be borne by the Company's insurers in accordance with the proposed settlement. In addition, the Company and the other settling issuer defendants will assign to the plaintiffs certain claims that they may have against the underwriters. If recoveries in excess of \$1.0 billion dollars are obtained by the plaintiffs from the underwriters, the Company's and the other issuer defendants' monetary obligations to the class plaintiffs will be satisfied. Furthermore, the settlement is subject to a hearing on fairness and approval by the Federal District Court overseeing the litigations. On February 15, 2005, the Court issued an order preliminarily approving the terms of the proposed settlement. The Court also certified the settlement classes and class representatives for purposes of the proposed settlement only. On April 24, 2006, the Court held a fairness hearing to determine whether the proposed settlement should be approved. It is possible that the Federal District Court may not provide final approval to the settlement in whole or part. On December 5, 2006, the United States Court of Appeals for the 2nd Circuit issued a decision in *In re: Initial Public Offering Securities Litigation* (Docket No. 05-3349-cv), reversing the Federal District Court's finding that six focus cases involved in this litigation could be certified as class actions. It is not yet clear what impact, if any, the decision may have on the proposed settlement agreement. Plaintiffs have filed a petition for rehearing and/or for en banc review of the Second Circuit's decision, and the Federal District Court has indicated that it will not make any decision regarding the proposed settlement until the Second Circuit decides whether it will consider a rehearing. On January 24, 2007, the Second Circuit ordered the Underwriters to file a response on certain issues to Plaintiffs' request for a rehearing. Due to the inherent uncertainties of litigation and assignment of claims against the underwriters, and because the settlement has not yet been finally approved by the Federal District Court, the ultimate outcome of the matter cannot be predicted. In accordance with SFAS No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies* the Company believes any contingent liability related to this claim is not probable or estimable and therefore no amounts have been accrued in regards to this matter as of January 31, 2007.

The Company is involved in numerous lawsuits and receives numerous threats of litigation in the ordinary course of its business. The Company assesses potential liabilities in connection with these lawsuits and threatened lawsuits under SFAS No. 5. The Company accrues an estimated loss

**Table of Contents**

for these loss contingencies if both of the following conditions are met: information available prior to issuance of the financial statements indicates that it is probable that a liability has been incurred at the date of the financial statements and the amount of loss can be reasonably estimated. As of January 31, 2007, the Company has only accrued a liability for *Nolz, et al. v. TiVo* as the other lawsuits filed against the Company have not met the conditions for an accrual to be made. The Company expenses legal costs as they are incurred.

**Facilities Leases**

The Company's corporate headquarters consists of two buildings located in Alviso, California, which are used for administrative, sales and marketing, customer service, and product research and development activities. In October 1999, the Company entered into an office lease with WIX/NSJ Real Estate Limited Partnership for its headquarters. On April 27, 2006, the Company entered into the First Amendment to Lease Agreement, dated as of February 1, 2006, which amends the Lease Agreement, dated as of October 6, 1999. Under the Amendment, the Company extended for an additional three years, from March 9, 2007 to January 31, 2010, the current Lease Agreement. Under the terms of the Amendment, monthly rent is approximately \$165,000 with built-in base rent escalations periodically throughout the lease term. The lease is classified as an operating lease. Rent expense is recognized using the straight-line method over the lease term and for fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005 was \$2.1 million, \$3.0 million, and \$3.0 million, respectively.

Additionally, the Company delivered a letter of credit totaling \$477,000, to WIX/NSJ Real Estate Limited Partnership as collateral for performance by the Company of all of its obligations under the lease. The letter of credit is to remain in effect the entire term of the lease, but the amount does decrease over time. The Company also has operating leases for sales and administrative office space in New York.

Operating lease cash payments for the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005 were \$1.8 million, \$3.3 million, and \$3.1 million, respectively. Future minimum operating lease payments as of January 31, 2007, are as follows:

| <b>Fiscal Year Ending</b> | <b>Lease<br/>Payments<br/>(In thousands)</b> |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| January 31, 2008          | 2,331                                        |
| January 31, 2009          | 2,386                                        |
| January 31, 2010          | 2,431                                        |
| Total                     | \$ 7,148                                     |

**9. STOCKHOLDERS EQUITY/(DEFICIT)****Common Stock**

On September 11, 2006 the Company sold 8,264,463 shares of its common stock, to institutional investors at \$7.865 per share. The shares were registered pursuant to the Company's \$100 million universal shelf registration statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-113719). The net proceeds from this sale were approximately \$64.5 million after deducting the Company's estimated offering expenses of \$484,000.

During the fiscal year ended January 31, 2005 the Company issued an aggregate of 1,553,883 shares of common stock upon conversion of \$6.2 million in face value of convertible notes payable at the conversion price of \$3.99 per share. During the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, the Company issued 627,215 shares, 671,348 shares, and 434,083 shares of common stock as a result of employee stock purchase plan purchases and 1,892,697 shares, 1,643,915 shares, and 448,086 shares of common stock as a result of the exercise of stock options, respectively.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Warrants**

During the fiscal years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005 there were no new common stock warrants issued, and no warrants remain outstanding as of January 31, 2007.

In February 2004, Global Alliance Partners exercised two of their three-year warrants to purchase 15,000 shares in a cashless exercise that resulted in the net issuance of 10,886 shares of the Company's common stock. Additionally, NBC, a related party, exercised their five-year warrant to purchase 490,196 shares in a cashless exercise that resulted in the net issuance of 167,373 shares of the Company's common stock. NBC was issued this warrant in conjunction with the issuance of the convertible notes payable in August 2001. DIRECTV was issued 155,941 two-year warrants in April 2002 in conjunction with the Warrant and Registration Rights Agreement. These warrants were transferred by DIRECTV to their parent company, Hughes Electronics Corporation. In March 2004, Hughes Electronics Corporation exercised warrants to purchase 149,291 shares in a cashless exercise that resulted in the net issuance of 63,233 shares of the Company's common stock. The remaining 6,650 warrants expired, unexercised on April 16, 2004.

On August 28, 2001, five-year warrants were issued to convertible noteholders and bankers to purchase 2,192,404 shares of TiVo's common stock at an exercise price of \$7.85. On August 28, 2006, several of these warrant holders exercised their warrants resulting in the issuance of 424,150 shares of TiVo's common stock, pursuant to the terms of the agreement, and net proceeds of approximately \$3.3 million. The balance of the warrants that would have resulted in the issuance of 1,768,254 shares of TiVo Inc. common stock expired unexercised.

In September 2006, institutional investors exercised warrants to purchase 1,323,120 shares in a cashless exercise, resulting in the issuance of 484,166 shares of the Company's common stock.

During the fiscal year ended January 31, 2006, certain institutional investors exercised three-year warrants to purchase 1,323,120 shares in a cashless exercise, resulting in the net issuance of 338,190 shares of the Company's common stock.

### **10. EQUITY INCENTIVE PLANS**

#### *1997 Equity Incentive Plan*

Under the terms of the Company's 1997 Equity Incentive Plan, adopted in 1997 and amended and restated in 1999 (the "1997 Plan"), options to purchase shares of the Company's common stock may be granted to employees and other individuals at a price equal to the fair market value of the common stock at the date of grant. The options granted to new hires typically vest 25% after the first year of service, and the remaining 75% vest ratably over the next 36 months. The vesting periods for options granted to continuing employees vary, but typically vest monthly over a 48 month period. Options expire 10 years after the grant date, based on continued service. If the optionee's service terminates, options expire 90 days from the date of termination except under certain circumstances such as death or disability. The terms of the 1997 Plan allowed individuals to exercise options prior to full vesting. The number of shares authorized for option grants under the 1997 Plan is 4,000,000. As of January 31, 2007, 475,430 shares of the total authorized remain available for future grants.

#### *1999 Equity Incentive Plan*

In April 1999, the Company's stockholders approved the 1999 Equity Incentive Plan (the "1999 Plan"). Amendments to the 1999 Plan were adopted in July 1999. The 1999 Plan permits the granting of incentive stock options, non-statutory stock options, non-vested stock awards (also known as restricted stock), stock appreciation rights, performance-based awards, and stock purchase rights. The 1999 Plan allows the grant of options to purchase shares of the Company's common stock to employees and other individuals at a price equal to the fair market value of the common stock at the date of grant. The options granted to new employees typically vest 25% after the first year of service, and the remaining 75% vest monthly over the next 36 months. The vesting period for options granted to continuing employees may vary, but typically vest monthly over a 48 month period. Options expire 10 years after the grant date, based on continued service. If the optionee's service terminates,

## **Table of Contents**

options expire 90 days from the date of termination except under certain circumstances such as death or disability. The terms of the 1999 Plan allow individuals to early exercise options granted prior to August 8, 2001 from the date of grant, prior to full vesting. For options granted subsequent to August 8, 2001, options are exercisable only as the options vest. In the event that the individual terminates his or her service to the Company before becoming fully vested, the Company has the right to repurchase any exercised, unvested shares at the original option price. As of January 31, 2007, the number of shares authorized for option grants under the 1999 Plan is 45,302,210. The number of shares authorized for option grants is subject to an annual increase of the greater of 7% of outstanding shares or 4,000,000 shares. As of January 31, 2007, 21,030,150 shares of the total authorized remain available for future stock option grants.

### *1999 Non-Employee Directors' Stock Option Plan*

In July 1999, the Company adopted the 1999 Non-Employee Directors' Stock Option Plan (the "Directors' Plan"). The Directors' Plan provides for the automatic grant of options to purchase shares of the Company's common stock to non-employee directors at a price equal to the fair market value of the stock at the date of the grant. Initial options granted to new directors vest monthly over two years from the date of grant. Annual options granted to existing directors vest upon grant. The option term is ten years after the grant date, based on continued director service. If the director's service terminates, options expire 90 days from the date the director's service terminated. The number of shares authorized for option grants under the Directors' Plan is 1,300,000, subject to an annual increase of 100,000 shares. As of January 31, 2007, 618,333 shares of the total authorized remain available for future grants.

### *1999 Employee Stock Purchase Plan*

In July 1999, the Company adopted the 1999 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (the "Employee Stock Purchase Plan"). The Employee Stock Purchase Plan provides a means for employees to purchase TiVo common stock through payroll deductions of up to 15% of their base compensation. The Company offers the common stock purchase rights to eligible employees, generally all full-time employees who have been employed for at least 10 days. This plan allows for common stock purchase rights to be granted to employees of TiVo at a price equal to the lower of 85% of the fair market value on the first day of the offering or on the common stock purchase date. This plan has also incorporated a one-year look back feature in its provisions except for the offering period from February 1, 2006 through June 30, 2006 which had a look back of five months. Each offering consists of up to two purchase periods. The purchase periods previously began on May 1 and on November 1 of each year, and now begin on January 1 and on July 1 of each year, and are six months in length. Under the Employee Stock Purchase Plan, the board may, in the future, specify offerings up to 27 months. On August 15, 2002, the board amended the 1999 Employee Stock Purchase Plan to change the effective date for automatic annual increases to the reserve of shares issuable under the plan from December 31 to October 31. Effective October 31, 2002, the board approved the maximum annual increase of 500,000 shares to the total number of shares reserved for issuance under the Employee Stock Purchase Plan pursuant to the plan's automatic annual increase provision. As of January 31, 2007, the total number of shares reserved for issuance under this plan is 3,500,000. The number of shares available for stock issuance under this plan is subject to an annual increase on each October 31 through October 31, 2008, equal to the lowest of (i) 5 percent of the outstanding shares of common stock on a diluted basis, (ii) 500,000 shares, or (iii) a smaller number as determined by the board of directors. As of January 31, 2007, of the total 3,500,000 shares reserved for issuance under the Employee Stock Purchase Plan, there were 480,376 shares available for future purchases.

**Table of Contents****Stock Award Activity**

A summary of the stock options activity and related information for the twelve months ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005 is as follows:

|                                 | Shares<br>(in thousands) | Weighted-<br>Average<br>Exercise<br>Price | Aggregate<br>Intrinsic<br>Value<br>(in thousands) |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Outstanding at January 31, 2004 | 13,213                   | \$ 9.09                                   |                                                   |
| Grants                          | 4,071                    | 6.77                                      |                                                   |
| Exercises                       | (448)                    | 3.77                                      |                                                   |
| Forfeitures or expirations      | (1,269)                  | 11.46                                     |                                                   |
| Outstanding at January 31, 2005 | 15,567                   | \$ 8.44                                   | \$ 1,445                                          |
| Grants                          | 6,792                    | 4.95                                      |                                                   |
| Exercises                       | (1,644)                  | 4.26                                      |                                                   |
| Forfeitures or expirations      | (3,924)                  | 9.63                                      |                                                   |
| Outstanding at January 31, 2006 | 16,791                   | \$ 7.16                                   | \$ 9,009                                          |
| Grants                          | 5,416                    | 6.78                                      |                                                   |
| Exercises                       | (1,893)                  | 4.79                                      |                                                   |
| Forfeitures or expirations      | (2,144)                  | 8.00                                      |                                                   |
| Outstanding at January 31, 2007 | 18,170                   | \$ 7.19                                   | \$ 5,482                                          |

The aggregate intrinsic value in the preceding table is based on options with an exercise price less than the Company's closing stock price of \$5.35 as of January 31, 2007, which would have been received by the option holders had those option holders exercised their options as of that date. Total intrinsic value of options exercised was \$4.8 million, \$3.2 million, and \$2.1 million for the twelve months ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively.

The following table summarizes information about options outstanding at January 31, 2007:

| Options Outstanding      |          |                   |                            | Exercisable Options |                  |                  |  |
|--------------------------|----------|-------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------|------------------|--|
| Range of Exercise Prices |          | Weighted Average  |                            | Weighted Average    |                  | Weighted Average |  |
|                          |          | Number of Shares  | Remaining Contractual Life | Exercise Price      | Number of Shares | Exercise Prices  |  |
| \$0.45                   | \$ 3.78  | 2,098,198         | 7.3                        | \$ 3.65             | 1,073,523        | \$ 3.53          |  |
| \$3.83                   | \$ 5.11  | 1,967,298         | 6.69                       | \$ 4.39             | 1,361,262        | \$ 4.31          |  |
| \$5.13                   | \$ 6.31  | 2,347,957         | 6.53                       | \$ 5.77             | 1,561,651        | \$ 5.87          |  |
| \$6.32                   | \$ 6.51  | 1,578,634         | 5.88                       | \$ 6.48             | 846,207          | \$ 6.49          |  |
| \$6.52                   | \$ 6.52  | 2,023,125         | 8.41                       | \$ 6.52             | 759,061          | \$ 6.52          |  |
| \$6.53                   | \$ 6.71  | 2,432,363         | 8.99                       | \$ 6.70             | 502,390          | \$ 6.71          |  |
| \$6.73                   | \$ 7.24  | 2,131,664         | 7.57                       | \$ 7.08             | 1,129,273        | \$ 7.06          |  |
| \$7.25                   | \$ 10.57 | 2,253,368         | 6.85                       | \$ 8.78             | 1,345,440        | \$ 9.44          |  |
| \$11.00                  | \$ 35.75 | 1,329,500         | 3.39                       | \$ 19.54            | 1,317,695        | \$ 19.61         |  |
| \$37.63                  | \$ 37.63 | 8,000             | 0.19                       | \$ 37.63            | 8,000            | \$ 37.63         |  |
| <b>Total</b>             |          | <b>18,170,107</b> | <b>7.05</b>                | <b>\$ 7.19</b>      | <b>9,904,502</b> | <b>\$ 8.02</b>   |  |



**Table of Contents**

Net cash proceeds from the exercise of stock options were \$9.1 million, \$7.0 million, and \$1.7 million for the twelve months ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively. Options outstanding that have vested and are expected to vest as of January 31, 2007 are as follows:

|                  | Shares<br>(in thousands) | Weighted-<br>Average<br>Exercise<br>Price | Weighted-<br>Average<br>Remaining<br>Contractual<br>Term | Aggregate<br>Intrinsic<br>Value<br>(in thousands) |
|------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Vested           | 9,905                    | \$ 8.02                                   | 5.95                                                     | \$ 3,381                                          |
| Expected to vest | 4,512                    | \$ 6.19                                   | 8.61                                                     | \$ 1,122                                          |
| <b>Total</b>     | <b>14,417</b>            | <b>\$ 7.45</b>                            | <b>6.78</b>                                              | <b>\$ 4,503</b>                                   |

Options outstanding that are expected to vest are net of estimated future option forfeitures in accordance with the provisions of SFAS No. 123R, which are estimated when compensation costs are recognized.

*Restricted Stock Awards*

The Company had 495,867 restricted stock awards outstanding as of January 31, 2007, which were excluded from the options outstanding balances in the preceding tables. The total aggregate grant date fair value was \$3.4 million. Aggregate intrinsic value of restricted stock awards at January 31, 2007 was \$2.7 million based on the Company's closing stock price on January 31, 2007. Approximately 227,000, 9,000, and 17,000 of the previously granted restricted stock awards vested during the twelve months ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively. The grant of these restricted stock awards has been deducted from the shares available for grant under the Company's stock option plans. The total fair value of restricted stock awards vested was \$1.3 million, \$95,000 and \$180,000 for the twelve months ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively.

The following table summarizes the Company's unvested stock activity for the three years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005:

|                                    | Number of<br>Shares<br>(in thousands) | Weighted-Average<br>Grant Date Fair<br>Value |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Unvested stock at January 31, 2004 | 26                                    | \$ 10.57                                     |
| Granted                            |                                       |                                              |
| Vested                             | (17)                                  | \$ 10.57                                     |
| Forfeited                          |                                       |                                              |
| Unvested stock at January 31, 2005 | 9                                     | \$ 10.57                                     |
| Granted                            | 480                                   | \$ 6.11                                      |
| Vested                             | (9)                                   | \$ 10.57                                     |
| Forfeited                          |                                       |                                              |
| Unvested stock at January 31, 2006 | 480                                   | \$ 6.11                                      |
| Granted                            | 257                                   | \$ 7.32                                      |
| Vested                             | (227)                                 | \$ 5.69                                      |
| Forfeited                          | (14)                                  | \$ 6.71                                      |
| Unvested stock at January 31, 2007 | 496                                   | \$ 6.91                                      |



**Table of Contents***Performance-Based Awards*

Under the 1999 Plan, the Company authorized performance-based stock option and restricted stock awards for selected executives and other key employees. The number of awards to be issued, the grant date and exercise price will be determined in the first quarter of fiscal 2008 based on upon meeting various departmental and company-wide performance goals for fiscal year 2007. The expected numbers of awards to be issued are 161,000 for stock option awards and 59,000 shares for restricted stock. The stock option awards will vest 50% one year after issuance and the remaining 50% will vest over the next 12 months. The vesting period for restricted stock awards may vary, but typically will vest after one- or two year period. As of January 31, 2007, total compensation cost recognized related to these performance-based awards was approximately \$511,000. As of January 31, 2007, \$701,000 of total unrecognized compensation cost related to these awards are expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 2.05 years.

**11. CONVERTIBLE NOTES PAYABLE**

On August 28, 2001, the Company closed a private placement of \$51.8 million in face value of 7% convertible notes payable due August 15, 2006 and warrants and received cash proceeds, net of issuance costs, of approximately \$40.1 million from accredited investors. TiVo received gross cash proceeds of approximately \$36.8 million from non-related party noteholders and \$6.9 million from existing stockholders for a total of \$43.7 million. In addition, the Company received non-cash proceeds of \$8.1 million in the form of advertising and promotional services from Discovery and NBC, who were existing stockholders. Debt issuance costs were approximately \$3.6 million, resulting in net cash proceeds of approximately \$40.1 million. Of the total gross proceeds of \$51.8 million, \$8.1 million was recorded as prepaid advertising and promotional services.

The total value of the warrants issued to convertible noteholders in the private placement was \$9.6 million and was recorded as a discount on the convertible notes payable. This discount was amortized to interest expense and other and accreted to the carrying value of the convertible notes payable over the five-year life of the notes payable or upon conversion, if earlier.

The convertible notes carried a coupon interest rate of 7%. The effective interest rate of the convertible notes, including coupon interest and amortization of discount, amortization of the beneficial conversion amount and amortization of prepaid debt issuance costs was approximately 58%. The discount, the beneficial conversion amount and prepaid issuance costs were amortized using the straight-line method over the term of the notes or upon conversion, if earlier, which approximates the effective interest rate method.

During the fiscal year ended January 31, 2004, the Company issued 2,506,265 shares of common stock as a result of one convertible noteholder, a related party, converting \$10.0 million in face value of convertible notes payable-related parties at the conversion price of \$3.99 per share, in accordance with the terms of the Convertible Notes Payable Indenture.

On November 26, 2004, the Company notified by mail the registered holders of its convertible notes payable that it elected to exercise its option to redeem all remaining unconverted outstanding notes payable by the redemption date of January 25, 2005.

On January 24, 2005, the Company issued 1,127,819 shares of common stock to a noteholder upon conversion of \$4,500,000 aggregate principal amount of its convertible notes at the then current conversion price of \$3.99 per share. Prior to January 24, 2005, on December 21, 2004 and January 19, 2005, the Company had issued 125,313 and 300,751 shares of common stock to two noteholders upon conversion of, respectively, \$500,000 and \$1,200,000 aggregate principal amounts of their convertible notes at the then current conversion price of \$3.99 per share. The issuance of these shares of common stock was exempt from registration pursuant to Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act. On January 25, 2005, the Company redeemed for cash the remaining \$4,250,000 outstanding 7% convertible senior note at a redemption price equal to the aggregate principal amount plus accrued interest up to, but not including, the redemption date of January 25, 2005. There were no notes outstanding following the redemption date.

## **Table of Contents**

Interest expense and other for the year ended January 31, 2005 includes coupon interest expense of \$572,000; amortization of the discount pertaining to the value of the warrants issued on convertible notes payable of \$1.1 million; and amortization of the discount pertaining to the value of beneficial conversion of \$3.4 million.

### **12. RETIREMENT PLAN**

In December 1997, the Company established a 401(k) Retirement Plan (the "Retirement Plan") available to employees who meet the plan's eligibility requirements. Participants may elect to contribute a percentage of their compensation to the Retirement Plan up to a statutory limit. Participants are fully vested in their contributions. The Company may make discretionary contributions to the Retirement Plan as a percentage of participant contributions, subject to established limits. The Company has not made any contributions to the Retirement Plan through January 31, 2007.

### **13. ADOPTION OF STOCKHOLDER RIGHTS PLAN**

On January 9, 2001, TiVo's Board of Directors declared a dividend distribution of one Preferred Share Purchase Right ("Right") on each outstanding share of TiVo common stock outstanding at the close of business on January 1, 2001 (the "Rights Plan"). Subject to limited exceptions, the Rights will be exercisable if a person or group acquires 15% or more or 30.01% or more in the case of AOL and its affiliates and associates, of the Company's common stock or announces a tender offer for 15% or more of the common stock, ("Acquiring Person"). On April 12, 2006, TiVo amended the Rights Plan's definition of Acquiring Person to remove the defined term "Existing Holder". Under certain circumstances, each Right will entitle stockholders to buy one one-hundredth of a share of newly created Series B Junior Participating Preferred Stock of TiVo at an exercise price of \$60.00 per Right, subject to adjustments under certain circumstances. The rights are not exercisable as of the date of this filing. The TiVo Board will be entitled to redeem the Rights at \$.01 per Right at any time before a person has become an Acquiring Person.

The Rights are intended to enable all TiVo stockholders to realize the long-term value of their investment in the Company. They do not prevent a takeover, but should encourage anyone seeking to acquire TiVo to negotiate with the Board of Directors prior to attempting a takeover. The Rights Plan will expire on January 9, 2011.

The Rights were not being distributed in response to any specific effort to acquire control of TiVo. The Rights are designed to assure that all TiVo stockholders receive fair and equal treatment in the event of any proposed takeover of TiVo and to guard against partial tender offers, open market accumulations and other abusive tactics to gain control of TiVo without paying all stockholders a control premium.

If a person becomes an Acquiring Person, each Right will entitle its holder to purchase, at the Right's then-current exercise price, a number of common shares of TiVo having a market value at that time of twice the Right's exercise price. Rights held by the Acquiring Person will become void and will not be exercisable to purchase shares at the bargain purchase price. If TiVo is acquired in a merger or other business combination transaction which has not been approved by the Board of Directors, each Right will entitle its holder to purchase, at the Right's then-current exercise price, a number of the acquiring company's common shares having a market value at that time of twice the Right's exercise price.

The dividend distribution to establish the new Rights Plan was paid to stockholders of record on January 31, 2001. The Rights distribution is not taxable to stockholders.

**Table of Contents****14. STOCK-BASED COMPENSATION**

Total stock-based compensation recognized on the consolidated statements of operations for the twelve months ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively is as follows:

**SARs/Option Grants and Employee Stock Purchase Rights**

|                                                                                | Fiscal Year Ended January 31,           |      |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------|------|
|                                                                                | 2007                                    | 2006 | 2005 |
|                                                                                | (In thousands, except per share amount) |      |      |
| Cost of revenues                                                               | \$ 1,490                                | \$   | \$   |
| Research and development                                                       | 5,169                                   |      |      |
| Sales and marketing                                                            | 1,340                                   |      |      |
| General and administrative                                                     | 5,020                                   |      |      |
| Stock-based compensation effect before income taxes                            | \$ 13,019                               | \$   | \$   |
| Income tax benefit                                                             |                                         |      |      |
| Total stock-based compensation effects in net income                           | \$ 13,019                               | \$   | \$   |
| Stock-based compensation effect on basic and diluted earnings per common share | \$ 0.14                                 | \$   | \$   |

**Restricted Stock Grants**

|                                                      | Fiscal Year Ended January 31,           |        |          |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------|----------|
|                                                      | 2007                                    | 2006   | 2005     |
|                                                      | (In thousands, except per share amount) |        |          |
| Cost of revenues                                     | \$                                      | \$     | \$       |
| Research and development                             | \$ 427                                  | (85)   | 754      |
| Sales and marketing                                  | 309                                     | 55     | 302      |
| General and administrative                           | 957                                     | 415    |          |
| Stock-based compensation effect before income taxes  | \$ 1,693                                | \$ 385 | \$ 1,056 |
| Income tax benefit                                   |                                         |        |          |
| Total stock-based compensation effects in net income | \$ 1,693                                | \$ 385 | \$ 1,056 |

No income tax benefit was realized from stock option exercises during the twelve months ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively. In accordance with SFAS 123R, the Company presents excess tax benefits from the exercise of stock options, if any, as financing cash flows rather than operating cash flows.

As of January 31, 2007, \$28.8 million of total unrecognized compensation cost related to stock options is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 2.8 years. As of January 31, 2007, \$1.8 million of total unrecognized compensation costs related to unvested restricted stock is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 1.86 years.

On November 10, 2005, the FASB issued FASB Staff Position No. FAS 123(R)-3, *Transition Election Related to Accounting for Tax Effects of Share-Based Payment Awards*. The Company has elected to adopt the alternative transition method provided in the FASB Staff Position for calculating the effects of share-based compensation pursuant to FAS 123(R). The alternative transition method includes a simplified method to establish the beginning balance of the additional paid in capital pool (APIC pool) related to the tax effects of employee share-based compensation, which is available to absorb tax deficiencies recognized subsequent to the adoption of FAS 123(R).



**Table of Contents**

Proforma information required under SFAS No. 123 and SFAS 148 for periods prior to fiscal year 2007 as if the Company had applied the fair value recognition provisions of SFAS No. 123 to options granted under the Company's equity incentive plans, was as follows:

|                                                                                                                                        | <b>Fiscal Year Ended January 31,</b> |             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
|                                                                                                                                        | <b>2006</b>                          | <b>2005</b> |
| Net loss, as reported                                                                                                                  | \$ (36,999)                          | \$ (79,842) |
| Add back: stock-based compensation expense recognized, net of related tax effects                                                      | 385                                  | 1,056       |
| Pro forma effect of stock-based compensation expense determined under the fair value method for all awards, net of related tax effects | (10,640)                             | (11,383)    |
| Net loss, pro forma                                                                                                                    | \$ (47,254)                          | \$ (90,169) |
| Basic and diluted loss per common share, as reported                                                                                   | \$ (0.44)                            | \$ (0.99)   |
| Basic and diluted loss per common share, pro forma                                                                                     | \$ (0.56)                            | \$ (1.12)   |

SFAS No. 123R requires the use of a valuation model to calculate the fair value of stock-based awards. The Company has elected to use the Black-Scholes option-pricing model, which incorporates various assumptions including volatility, expected life, and interest rate. The expected volatility is based on a combination of historical volatility of the Company's common stock and implied volatility in market traded options on the Company's common stock. The expected life of an award is based on the simplified calculation of expected life pursuant to Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 107 - Share Based Payments. The interest rate is based on the average of U.S. Treasury yield curve for the expected life of the award.

The assumptions used for the twelve months ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively, and the resulting estimates of weighted-average fair value per share of options and ESPP shares granted during those periods are as follows:

|                                               | ESPP                          |         |         | Stock Options |         |         |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------|---------|---------------|---------|---------|
|                                               | Fiscal Year Ended January 31, |         |         |               |         |         |
|                                               | 2007                          | 2006    | 2005    | 2007          | 2006    | 2005    |
| Expected life (in years)                      | 0.57                          | 0.40    | 0.50    | 6.25          | 4.00    | 3.60    |
| Volatility                                    | 55%                           | 62%     | 58%     | 81%           | 61%     | 54%     |
| Average risk free interest rate               | 4.96%                         | 3.54%   | 1.76%   | 4.81%         | 3.85%   | 3.31%   |
| Dividend Yield                                | 0%                            | 0%      | 0%      | 0%            | 0%      | 0%      |
| Weighted-average fair value during the period | \$ 1.95                       | \$ 2.03 | \$ 2.32 | \$ 4.96       | \$ 2.38 | \$ 2.92 |

Prior to the adoption of SFAS 123R, the Company presented deferred compensation as a separate component of stockholder equity. In accordance with the provisions of SFAS 123R, on February 1, 2006, the Company reclassified the balance in deferred compensation to additional paid-in capital on the balance sheet.

**15. INCOME TAXES**

Income tax provision was \$52,000, \$64,000 and \$134,000 in fiscal years 2007, 2006, and 2005, respectively, due to state income taxes and foreign withholding taxes paid in Korea and Japan. The income tax expense differed from the amounts computed by applying the U.S. federal income tax rate of 35% to pretax loss as a result of the following:

|                                                                                    | <b>Fiscal Year Ended January 31,</b> |             |             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
|                                                                                    | <b>2007</b>                          | <b>2006</b> | <b>2005</b> |
|                                                                                    | <b>(In thousands)</b>                |             |             |
| Federal statutory rate of 35%                                                      | \$ (16,696)                          | \$ (12,927) | \$ (27,898) |
| State taxes                                                                        | 41                                   | 38          | 21          |
| Foreign withholding tax                                                            | 11                                   | 26          | 113         |
| Net operating loss and temporary differences for which no tax benefit was realized | 13,540                               | 12,766      | 26,470      |

## Edgar Filing: TIVO INC - Form 10-K

|                                   |       |       |        |
|-----------------------------------|-------|-------|--------|
| Stock Based Compensation          | 3,074 |       |        |
| Non-deductible expenses and other | 82    | 161   | 1,428  |
| Total tax expense                 | \$ 52 | \$ 64 | \$ 134 |

**Table of Contents**

The tax effects of temporary differences that give rise to significant portions of the Company's deferred tax assets are presented below:

|                                       | Fiscal Year Ended January 31, |            |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|
|                                       | 2007                          | 2006       |
|                                       | (In thousands)                |            |
| Deferred tax assets:                  |                               |            |
| Net operating loss & credits          | \$ 159,436                    | \$ 168,594 |
| Deferred revenue and rent             | 48,977                        | 51,299     |
| Capitalized research                  | 44,757                        | 36,694     |
| Other                                 | 12,647                        | 4,265      |
| Total deferred tax assets             | 265,817                       | 260,852    |
| Valuation allowance                   | (265,817)                     | (260,852)  |
| Net deferred tax assets (liabilities) | \$                            | \$         |

Management has established a valuation allowance for the portion of deferred tax assets for which realization is uncertain. The net change in the total valuation allowance for the years ended January 31, 2007, 2006, and 2005 was an increase of \$5.0 million, \$17.6 million, and \$25.7 million, respectively.

As of January 31, 2007, the Company had net operating loss carryforwards for federal and state income tax purposes of approximately \$407.0 million and \$182.0 million, respectively, available to reduce future income subject to income taxes. Of these amounts \$20.0 million represents federal and state tax deductions from stock option compensation.

The federal net operating loss carryforwards expire beginning in 2012 through 2027. During fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, approximately \$79 million of state net operating loss carryforwards expired unutilized. The remaining state net operating loss carryforwards expire beginning in 2012 through 2017.

As of January 31, 2007, unused research and development tax credits of approximately \$8.3 million and \$9.4 million, respectively are available to reduce future federal and California income taxes. The federal research credit carryforwards will begin to expire if not utilized by 2012. California research and experimental tax credits carryforward indefinitely until utilized.

Federal and state laws impose substantial restrictions on the utilization of net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards in the event of an ownership change, as defined in Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code. The Company has not yet determined whether an ownership change occurred due to significant stock transactions in each of the reporting years disclosed. If an ownership change has occurred, utilization of the net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards could be significantly reduced.

**Table of Contents****16. NET LOSS PER COMMON SHARE**

Basic and diluted net loss per common share is calculated in accordance with SFAS No. 128, Earnings Per Share. Basic net loss per common share is computed by dividing net loss by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding, excluding unvested restricted stock.

The weighted average number of shares outstanding used in the computation of basic and diluted net loss per share does not include the effect of the following potentially outstanding common stock. The effects of these potentially outstanding shares were not included in the calculation of diluted net loss per share because the effect would have been antidilutive:

|                                         | Fiscal Year Ended January 31, |            |            |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|------------|
|                                         | 2007                          | 2006       | 2005       |
| Repurchaseable common stock             |                               |            | 11,937     |
| Unvested restricted stock outstanding   | 495,867                       | 480,000    | 8,750      |
| Options to purchase common stock        | 18,170,107                    | 16,790,588 | 15,552,039 |
| Potential shares to be issued from ESPP | 480,376                       | 166,453    | 241,717    |
| Warrants to purchase common stock       |                               | 3,515,524  | 4,838,644  |
| Total                                   | 19,146,350                    | 20,952,565 | 20,653,087 |

**17. INVESTMENT IN TGC, INC.**

On August 9, 2004, the Company acquired a minority interest in TGC, Inc. ( TGC ), a newly formed independent entity. In exchange for the Company's interest in TGC, it granted TGC a license to certain aspects of its technology for use in China, Singapore, Hong Kong, Macau and Taiwan. The Company accounts for its investment in TGC under the equity method of accounting as it owns less than 50% of TGC's equity. No gain was recognized by the Company for its interest in TGC. There is significant uncertainty as to the realization of a gain due to the start-up nature of TGC. Accordingly since the intellectual property licensed had no carrying value on the Company's financial statements, no value has been assigned to the Company's interest in TGC. This transaction did not have a material effect on the Company's results of operations in fiscal years 2007, 2006, and 2005 as TGC's activity and financial position were not material.

Through TGC, the Company has gained access to high quality, engineering resources for the design and development of additional digital video recorder platforms. TGC engages in design, development, and licensing activities related to digital video recorder platforms and technology. In fiscal years 2007 and 2006, TGC performed design and development activities related to a potential TiVo product for the US market. During fiscal year ended January 31, 2007 and 2006 the Company paid TGC \$2.2 million and \$894,000 for a variety of services including research and development, and service fees related to designing and building the Company's product. In December 2005, TGC launched a DVR product that includes TiVo technology and branding in Taiwan. Management expects TGC will pursue opportunities to market TiVo technology in Taiwan, Singapore, Hong Kong, and Macau. TGC's technology license from TiVo is exclusive for the first five years and non-exclusive to TGC for a perpetual period afterwards. Subject to certain terms and conditions, this license grants TGC limited access to portions of TiVo's source code and provides for both parties to exchange improvements to that code during the first five years. The Company will be entitled to royalty payments from TGC in limited circumstances. In addition, TGC has agreed not to market, without the prior consent of TiVo, any DVR products or DVR services that do not support the TiVo service outside of China, Singapore, Hong Kong, Macau and Taiwan. In the United States, TGC may offer DVR products that support the U.S. TiVo service to TiVo, authorized TiVo licensees, or with TiVo's prior approval, retail distributors.

As of January 31, 2007, TiVo's preferred share investment accounted for approximately 49.2% of TGC's equity (approximately 40.4% on a fully-diluted basis assuming the issuance of

## **Table of Contents**

options to executives of TGC). The remainder of TGC's shareholders include financial investors (including New Enterprise Associates, a stockholder of TiVo Inc. that has a representative on TiVo's board of directors and holds less than 10% of TGC's equity) and certain members of TGC's management team who have contributed cash or services in exchange for equity. The Company has two seats on TGC's five-member board of directors. Subject to restrictions and under specific circumstances, the Company also has a limited call right to acquire all of TGC after five years or upon a change of control of TiVo at a premium to TGC's fair market value. The Company also has the right to acquire at least a majority of TGC in the event of a TGC initial public offering at the net initial public offering price. TGC is incorporated in the Cayman Islands.

With the approval of the Company's board of directors, Ta-Wei Chien, TiVo's former Senior Vice President, General Manager of TiVo Technologies, serves as TGC's Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of TGC's board of directors. Mr. Chien resigned from his position at TiVo on August 3, 2004.

### **18. CITIGROUP LINE OF CREDIT**

On January 25, 2007, the Company entered into a credit agreement, together with a post-closing agreement and related security and other ancillary agreements, with Citigroup Global Markets Realty Corp., as lender and agent, for which we paid \$250,000 in commitment fees during the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007. Citigroup, as lender, may syndicate its commitment under the credit agreement to other lenders, subject to certain limitations. This credit facility replaces a line of credit with Silicon Valley Bank, which was in place from July 17, 2003 until it expired on September 28, 2006.

Under the terms of the credit agreement Citigroup will extend a revolving line of credit equal to the lesser of \$50 million or amounts available pursuant to a borrowing base calculation. As of January 31, 2007, we were able to borrow \$50 million. The Company may request that an additional \$50 million be added to the revolving line of credit. The credit agreement requires the Company to use proceeds exclusively for working capital and general corporate purposes.

Borrowings under the credit agreement are secured by a first-priority security interest on substantially all of the Company's assets (except for certain intellectual property held by the Company's subsidiaries and certain other assets). Borrowings under the credit agreement will bear interest at a rate equal to 1-month LIBOR for U.S. dollar deposits plus 4.0%, but during an event of default, the interest rate becomes 2.0% above the rate in effect immediately before the event of default.

The credit agreement includes, among other terms and conditions, limitations on the Company's ability to create, incur, assume or be liable for indebtedness (other than certain types of permitted indebtedness); dispose of assets outside the ordinary course (subject to certain exceptions); acquire, merge or consolidate with or into another person or entity (other than certain types of permitted acquisitions); create, incur or allow any lien on any of its property or assign any right to receive income (except for certain permitted liens); make investments (other than certain types of investments); or pay dividends or make distributions (each subject to certain exceptions). The Company's previous line of credit with Silicon Valley Bank contained restrictive covenants with generally similar limitations. At January 31, 2007, the Company was in compliance with these covenants and had zero outstanding under the line of credit. The line of credit terminates and any and all borrowings are due on January 25, 2010, but may be terminated earlier by the Company without penalty upon written notice and prompt repayment of all amounts borrowed.

## **Table of Contents**

### **19. COMCAST AGREEMENT**

On March 15, 2005, the Company entered into a non-exclusive licensing and marketing agreement with Comcast STB Software DVR, LLC, a wholly-owned subsidiary of Comcast Corporation, and Comcast Corporation, as guarantor of Comcast STB's obligations under the agreement. Pursuant to this agreement, the Company agreed to develop a TiVo-branded software solution for deployment on Comcast's DVR platforms, which would enable any TiVo-specific DVR and networking features requested by Comcast, such as WishList® searches, Season Pass recordings, home media features, and TiVoToGo transfers. In addition, the Company agreed to develop a TiVo Interactive Advertising Management System for deployment on Comcast platforms to enable the provision of local and national advertising to Comcast subscribers.

Comcast will pay a recurring monthly fee per Comcast subscriber who receives the TiVo service through Comcast. Comcast will also pay the Company fees for engineering services for the development and integration of the TiVo service software solution (subject to adjustment under certain circumstances) and the TiVo Interactive Advertising Management System.

The initial term of this agreement is for seven years from completion of the TiVo service software solution, with Comcast permitted to renew for additional 1-year terms for up to a total of 8 additional years as long as certain deployment thresholds have been achieved. During the term of the agreement, TiVo will provide Comcast with certain customer and maintenance support and will provide certain additional development work. TiVo will have the continuing right to sell certain types of advertising in connection with the TiVo service offered through Comcast. TiVo will also have a limited right to sell certain types of advertising on other Comcast DVR set-top boxes enabled with the TiVo Interactive Advertising Management System, subject to Comcast's option to terminate such right in exchange for certain advertising-related payments.

On March 28, 2006, the Company executed the First Amendment to the Licensing and Marketing Agreement, effective as of March 27, 2006, between TiVo Inc. and Comcast STB Software DVR, LLC and Comcast Corporation. The First Amendment to the Licensing and Marketing Agreement extends the acceptance deadline for the TiVo Interactive Advertising Management System from the second anniversary of the Effective Date of the Agreement to February 15, 2008, unless the parties agree on a later date. Concurrently, the Company also finalized the scope of the engineering services to be delivered with respect to the initial statement of work for the TiVo Interactive Advertising Management System. Effective October 23, 2006, the Company entered into the Second Amendment to the Licensing and Marketing Agreement, between TiVo Inc. and Comcast STB Software DVR, LLC and Comcast Corporation. The Second Amendment to the Licensing and Marketing Agreement extends the acceptance deadline for the TiVo Experience from the second anniversary of the Effective Date of the Agreement to June 30, 2007 or such later date as maybe agreed upon by the parties. The Second Amendment also allows the parties to extend the date for acceptance of the TiVo Interactive Advertising Management System to such later date as maybe agreed upon by the parties.

Under the licensing and marketing agreement, Comcast paid TiVo an upfront fee that the Company recorded as deferred revenue. This upfront fee, subsequent milestone payments, and related costs were initially deferred as the final statement of work was not complete. Development costs were \$4.6 million, as of January 31, 2006, and were classified on the consolidated balance sheet under prepaid expense and other, current. During the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, the Company recognized \$16.2 million in costs and revenues, including the \$4.6 million deferred costs as of January 31, 2006. Currently, it is not possible to separate the various elements within the arrangement due to a lack of fair value for undelivered elements in the contract. Consequently, the Company recognizes revenues and costs based on a zero profit model, which results in the recognition of equal amounts of revenues and costs.

Development and deployment of the TiVo service software solution is expected to launch in its initial market in the near future. Development and deployment of the TiVo Interactive Advertising Management System is targeted to begin after the second anniversary of this agreement, but by no later than February 15, 2008, unless a later date is agreed upon by the parties. In the event

## **Table of Contents**

development of the TiVo service software solution and the TiVo Interactive Advertising Management System have not been completed by the relevant deadlines, the Company could be subject to certain consequences, including, but not limited to, termination of the agreement. As part of this agreement, Comcast is receiving a non-exclusive, non-transferable license to the Company's intellectual property in order to deploy the TiVo service software solution and TiVo Interactive Advertising Management System, including certain trademark branding rights and a covenant not to assert under TiVo's patents, which rights extend only to Comcast Corporation, its affiliates, and certain of its vendors and suppliers with respect to Comcast products and services. Such non-exclusive, non-transferable license to the Company's intellectual property will, under certain circumstances, continue after the termination of this agreement. In addition, Comcast is entitled to certain most favored customer terms as compared with other multi-channel video distributors who license certain TiVo technology. Pursuant to the terms of this agreement, Comcast has the right to terminate the agreement in the event the Company is the subject of certain change of control transactions involving any of certain specified companies.

### **20. DEVELOPMENT AGREEMENT AND SERVICES AGREEMENT WITH DIRECTV, INC.**

On April 7, 2006, the Company entered into the Seventh Amendment of the Development Agreement, dated as of February 15, 2002, with DIRECTV, Inc. Under this amendment, which amends the expiration date of the Development Agreement from February 15, 2007, to February 15, 2010, TiVo will continue to provide support for DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service through the extended expiration date of the Development Agreement, and will provide mutually agreed upon development services for no additional fee up to a defined maximum from February 2007 to February 2010. In addition, DIRECTV had the right to continue to distribute DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service through February 15, 2007, and a related grace period as set forth in the Development Agreement. Further, TiVo and DIRECTV agreed that neither party would assert its patents against the other party with respect to each company's products and services deployed prior to the expiration of the agreement, subject to limited exceptions. DIRECTV will continue to pay a monthly fee for each households using DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service similar to the amount paid by DIRECTV for households with DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service deployed since February 15, 2002, subject to a monthly minimum payment by DIRECTV. The Company defers a portion of these fees equal to the fair value of the undelivered development services. These deferred fees are classified on the Company's consolidated balance sheets under deferred revenue, current.

On April 7, 2006, the Company also entered into the First Amendment of the Amended and Restated Services Agreement, dated as of March 31, 2005, with DIRECTV. This amendment extends the terms of the current advertising arrangement between TiVo and DIRECTV, the Services Agreement until February 15, 2010, and additionally provides DIRECTV with the ability to obtain additional technical support and training for its use of advertising-related software tools with DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service.

### **21. COX AGREEMENT**

On August 22, 2006, TiVo entered into a non-exclusive licensing and distribution agreement with Cox Communications (CoxCom, Inc. or Cox). Pursuant to the agreement, the Company has agreed to develop a TiVo-branded software solution for deployment on Cox's DVR platforms, which would enable Cox to offer TiVo DVR and advertising software to its customers and advertising clients respectively. In addition, the Company has agreed to develop an advertising management system for deployment on Cox platforms to enable the provision of local and national advertising to Cox subscribers.

Under the agreement, Cox will pay TiVo a recurring monthly fee per box receiving the TiVo service through Cox. Cox will also pay the Company fees for engineering services for the development and integration of the TiVo service software solution and the advertising management system. Cox will also pay the Company commissions on certain new subscribers who use the TiVo service as offered by Cox.

The initial term of the Company's agreement is for five years from completion of the TiVo service software solution, but no longer than seven years after the effective date of the agreement.

**Table of Contents**

During the term of the agreement, the Company will provide Cox with certain customer support and maintenance services. The Company will have the continuing right to sell certain types of advertising in connection with the TiVo service offered through Cox. The Company will also have a right to sell certain types of advertising on other Cox DVR set-top boxes enabled with the advertising management system. As part of the agreement, Cox is receiving a non-exclusive, non-transferable license to specific TiVo intellectual property to deploy the TiVo service software solution and advertising management system, including certain trademark branding rights. Cox will also reimburse TiVo for the cost of certain third-party license fees. In addition, Cox may be entitled to certain most favored customer terms if the Company enters into future agreements with multi-channel video distributors whose commitment to deploy TiVo DVRs and advertising software is less than Cox's commitment. Cox has the right to terminate the agreement in the event the Company is the subject of certain change of control transactions involving any of certain specified companies. In the fiscal year ended January 31, 2007, the Company had not yet begun to recognize revenues or expenses under this agreement.

**ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE**  
None.

## **Table of Contents**

### **ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES**

#### **(a) Evaluation of disclosure controls and procedures.**

Our management, with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, evaluated the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures pursuant to Rule 13a-15 and Rule 15d-15(b) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 as amended (the "Exchange Act") as of the end of the period covered by this report (the "Evaluation Date"). In designing and evaluating the disclosure controls and procedures, management recognized that any controls and procedures, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance of achieving the desired control objectives. In addition, the design of disclosure controls and procedures must reflect the fact that there are resource constraints and that we are required to apply our judgment in evaluating the benefits of possible controls and procedures relative to our costs.

Based on that evaluation, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer concluded that, as of the Evaluation Date, our disclosure controls and procedures are effective to provide reasonable assurance that information required to be disclosed by us in the reports that we file or submit under the Exchange Act (i) is accumulated and communicated to our management, including our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, as appropriate, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure, and (ii) is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the Securities and Exchange Commission rules and forms.

#### **(b) Changes in internal control over financial reporting.**

There were no changes in our internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rule 13a-15(f)) during the quarter ended January 31, 2007 that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

#### **(c) Management's report on internal control over financial reporting.**

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting, as defined in Exchange Act Rule 13a-15(f) and Rule 15d-15(f). Management conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting based on the framework in Internal Control - Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. Based on this evaluation, management concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of January 31, 2007. Management reviewed the results of its assessment with our Audit Committee.

KPMG LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, which has audited the consolidated financial statements included in Item 8 of this report, has issued an attestation report on Management's assessment of our internal control over financial reporting, as of January 31, 2007, which is included herein.

#### **(d) Limitations on Effectiveness of Controls.**

Internal control over financial reporting refers to the process designed by, or under the supervision of, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, and effected by our board of directors, management and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and includes those policies and procedures that: (i) Pertain to the maintenance of records that in reasonable detail accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of our company; (ii) Provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of our company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and our board of directors; and (iii) Provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of company assets that could have a material effect on our financial statements.

Internal control over financial reporting cannot provide absolute assurance of achieving financial reporting objectives because of its inherent limitations. Internal control over financial

**Table of Contents**

reporting is a process that involves human diligence and compliance and is subject to lapses in judgment and breakdowns resulting from human failures. Internal control over financial reporting also can be circumvented by collusion or improper management override. Because of such limitations, there is a risk that material misstatements may not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by internal control over financial reporting. However, these inherent limitations are known features of the financial reporting process. Therefore, it is possible to design into the process safeguards to reduce, though not eliminate, this risk. In addition, the design of any control system is based in part upon certain assumptions about the likelihood of future events.

Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Attestation Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

**Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

The Board of Directors and Stockholders

TiVo Inc.:

We have audited management's assessment, included in the accompanying Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting appearing under Item 9A (c), that TiVo Inc. maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of January 31, 2007, based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). TiVo Inc.'s management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on management's assessment and an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, evaluating management's assessment, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

In our opinion, management's assessment that TiVo Inc. maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of January 31, 2007, is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework* issued by COSO. Also, in our opinion, TiVo Inc. maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of January 31, 2007, based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework* issued by COSO.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the consolidated balance sheets of TiVo Inc. and subsidiaries as of January 31, 2007 and 2006, and the related consolidated statements of operations, stockholders equity (deficit), and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended January 31, 2007, and our report dated April 12, 2007, expressed an unqualified opinion on those consolidated financial statements.

/s/ KPMG LLP

Mountain View, California

April 12, 2007

## **Table of Contents**

### **ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION**

None.

## **PART III**

### **ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS, AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE**

#### **Identification of Directors.**

The information under the caption Election of Directors, appearing in the Proxy Statement, is hereby incorporated by reference.

#### **Identification of Executive Officers and Certain Significant Employees.**

The information under the caption Executive Compensation and Other Information Elected Officers, appearing in the Proxy Statement, is hereby incorporated by reference.

#### **Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance.**

The information under the caption Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance, appearing in the Proxy Statement, is hereby incorporated by reference.

#### **Code of Ethics.**

The information under the caption Corporate Governance, appearing in the Proxy Statement, is hereby incorporated by reference. We have adopted a code of ethics that applies to our Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, and Vice President, Controller & Treasurer. This code of ethics is posted on our Website located at [www.tivo.com](http://www.tivo.com). The code of ethics may be found as follows: From our main Web page, first click on About TiVo Inc. on the left side of the page and then on Investor Relations. Next click on Corporate Governance under Investor Relations. Finally, click on TiVo's Code of Conduct.

#### **Audit Committee.**

The information under the caption Corporate Governance Board Committees and Meetings Audit Committee, appearing in the Proxy Statement, is hereby incorporated by reference.

### **ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION**

The information required by this Item is incorporated by reference from our Proxy Statement under the heading Executive Compensation and Other Information.

### **ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS**

The information under the captions Equity Compensation Plan Information and Ownership of Securities, appearing in the Proxy Statement, is hereby incorporated by reference.

### **ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS**

The information required by this Item is incorporated by reference from our Proxy Statement under the heading Certain Relationships and Related Transactions.

**ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT FEES AND SERVICES**

The information required by this Item is incorporated by reference from our Proxy Statement under the heading Independent Auditor Fees and Services.

**Table of Contents**

**PART IV**

**ITEM 15. EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES**

The following documents are filed as a part of this report:

- (1) Consolidated Financial Statement: See Index to Consolidated Financial Statements at Item 8 on page 64 of this report.
- (2) Financial Statement Schedule: The financial statement schedules are omitted as they are either not applicable or the information required is presented in the financial statement and notes there to under Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data.
- (3) Exhibits are incorporated herein by reference or are filed with this report as indicated below (numbered in accordance with Item 601 of Regulation S-K)

**Table of Contents**

| <b>EXHIBIT<br/>NUMBER</b> | <b>DESCRIPTION</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3.1                       | Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.2 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 14, 2000).                                                                                      |
| 3.2                       | Amended and Restated Bylaws (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.4 of the registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (SEC File No. 333-83515)).                                                                                                         |
| 4.8                       | Rights Agreement, dated as of January 16, 2001, between TiVo Inc. and Wells Fargo Shareowner Services, as Rights Agent (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K/A filed on January 19, 2001).                  |
| 4.9                       | First Amendment to Rights Agreement, dated as of February 20, 2001, between TiVo Inc. and Wells Fargo Shareowner Services, as Rights Agent (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on February 28, 2001). |
| 4.10                      | Second Amendment to Rights Agreement, dated as of April 12, 2006, between TiVo Inc. and Wells Fargo Shareowner Services, as Rights Agent (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.10 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 14, 2006).    |
| 4.11                      | Certificate of Designations of the Series B Junior Participating Preferred Stock of TiVo (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K/A filed on January 19, 2001).                                                 |
| 4.12                      | Certificate of Correction to the Certificate of Designations of the Series B Junior Participating Preferred Stock of TiVo (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K/A filed on January 19, 2001).                |
| 10.1*                     | Form of Indemnification Agreement between TiVo Inc. and its officers and directors (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (SEC File No. 333-83515)).                                                 |
| 10.2*                     | TiVo Inc.'s Amended and Restated 1997 Equity Incentive Plan and related documents (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 of the registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (SEC File No. 333-83515)).                                                  |
| 10.4*                     | TiVo Inc. Amended & Restated 1999 Non-Employee Directors' Stock Option Plan and related documents (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 10, 2004).                                     |
| 10.5*                     | TiVo Inc. Amended & Restated 1999 Equity Incentive Plan and related documents (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2005).                                                         |
| 10.6*                     | TiVo Inc. Amended & Restated 1999 Employee Stock Purchase Plan and related documents (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2005).                                                  |
| 10.7*                     | Form of Stock Option Agreement for Amended & Restated 1999 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2005).                                                      |
| 10.8*                     | Form of Stock Appreciation Rights Agreement for Amended & Restated 1999 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.5 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2005).                                         |

**Table of Contents**

| <b>EXHIBIT<br/>NUMBER</b> | <b>DESCRIPTION</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10.9*                     | Form of Restricted Stock Bonus Agreement for Amended & Restated 1999 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.5 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 9, 2005).                                |
| 10.10*                    | Form of Stock Option Agreement for Amended & Restated 1999 Non-Employee Directors' Stock Option Plan (filed herewith).                                                                                                                             |
| 10.11*                    | Form of Senior Vice President Change of Control Terms and Conditions Agreement (filed herewith).                                                                                                                                                   |
| 10.12*                    | Form of Vice President Change of Control Terms and Conditions Agreement (filed herewith).                                                                                                                                                          |
| 10.13+                    | Marketing Agreement between DIRECTV, Inc. and TiVo Inc., dated April 13, 1999 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8 of the registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (SEC File No. 333-83515)).                                         |
| 10.14+                    | Letter Agreement, dated as of September 28, 2001, between TiVo Inc. and DIRECTV, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 3, 2002).                                           |
| 10.15+                    | Letter Agreement, dated as of January 7, 2002, between TiVo Inc. and DIRECTV, Inc. incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.5 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 3, 2002).                                               |
| 10.16+                    | Amendment to Marketing Agreement and Tax Agreement, dated as of February 15, 2002, between TiVo Inc. and DIRECTV, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.6 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 3, 2002).          |
| 10.17                     | Second Consolidated Amendment to Marketing Agreement, dated as of June 30, 2003, between TiVo Inc. and DIRECTV, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 15, 2003).     |
| 10.18+                    | Development Agreement, dated as of February 15, 2002, between TiVo Inc. and DIRECTV, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 3, 2002).                                       |
| 10.19+                    | First Consolidated Amendment to Development Agreement, dated as of October 31, 2002, between DIRECTV, Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 16, 2002). |
| 10.20+                    | Second Amendment to Development Agreement, dated as of December 20, 2002, between DIRECTV, Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on December 31, 2002).               |
| 10.21+                    | Third Amendment to Development Agreement, dated as of January 8, 2003, between DIRECTV, Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on January 14, 2003).                   |
| 10.22+                    | Fourth Amendment to Development Agreement, dated as of April 17, 2003, between DIRECTV, Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on May 1, 2003).                        |

**Table of Contents**

| <b>EXHIBIT<br/>NUMBER</b> | <b>DESCRIPTION</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10.23+                    | Fifth Amendment to Development Agreement, dated as of December 19, 2003, between DIRECTV, Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.26 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 15, 2004).                  |
| 10.24+                    | Sixth Amendment to Development Agreement, dated as of April 30, 2004, between DIRECTV, Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on June 9, 2004).                     |
| 10. 25++                  | Seventh Amendment to the Development Agreement, dated as of April 7, 2006, between TiVo Inc. and DIRECTV Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.0 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on June 9, 2006).                 |
| 10.26+                    | Services Agreement, dated as of February 15, 2002, between TiVo Inc. and DIRECTV, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 3, 2002).                                          |
| 10.27+                    | First Amendment to the Services Agreement, dated as of October 3, 2003, between TiVo Inc. and DIRECTV, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 15, 2003).              |
| 10.28+                    | Amended and Restated Services Agreement, dated as of March 31, 2005, between TiVo Inc. and DIRECTV, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.30 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 15, 2005).                      |
| 10.29++                   | First Amendment to the Amended and Restated Services Agreement, dated as of April 7, 2006, between TiVo Inc. and DIRECTV Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on June 9, 2006). |
| 10.30                     | Lease Agreement, dated as of October 6, 1999, between Bixby Technology Park, LLC and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.24 of the Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 15, 1999).                                       |
| 10.31                     | First Amendment to Lease Agreement, dated as of February 1, 2006, between Bixby Technology Park, LLC and TiVo Inc. (incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 1, 2006).         |
| 10.32                     | Subordination, Non-Disturbance, and Attornment Agreement, effective as of October 6, 2006, between Greenwich Capital Financial Products, Inc. and TiVo Inc. (filed herewith).                                                                      |
| 10.33*                    | TiVo Inc. Fiscal Year 2007 Bonus Plan for Executives (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on April 4, 2006).                                                                            |
| 10.34*                    | TiVo Inc. Fiscal Year 2008 Bonus Plan for Executives (filed herewith).                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 10.35+                    | Vendor Agreement, dated as of March 3, 2002, between TiVo Inc. and Best Buy Co., Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 3, 2002).                                           |
| 10.36+                    | First Amendment to Vendor Agreement, effective as of February 1, 2003, between Best Buy Co., Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 of the registrant's Annual Report Form 10-K filed on May 1, 2003).                      |
| 10.37+                    | Second Amendment to Vendor Agreement, effective as of, between Best Buy Co., Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 of the registrant's Form 8-K filed on July 30, 2003)                                                    |

**Table of Contents**

| <b>EXHIBIT<br/>NUMBER</b> | <b>DESCRIPTION</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10.38+                    | Third Amendment to Vendor Agreement, effective as of, between Best Buy Co., Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.0 of the registrant's Quarterly Report filed on September 9, 2004).                                                                                                    |
| 10.39+                    | Fourth Amendment to Vendor Agreement, effective as of, between Best Buy Co., Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.0 of the registrant's Quarterly Report filed on December 10, 2004).                                                                                                   |
| 10.40+                    | Fifth Amendment to Vendor Agreement, effective as of February 28, 2006, between Best Buy Co., Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.41 of the registrant's Annual Report filed on April 15, 2005).                                                                                       |
| 10.41                     | Sixth Amendment to Vendor Agreement, effective as of February 28, 2006, between Best Buy Co., Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.46 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 14, 2006).                                                                          |
| 10.42                     | Direct Import Addendum to the Vendor Agreement, between Best Buy Purchasing LLC and TiVo Inc., effective October 10, 2005 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 of the registrant's Quarterly Report filed on December 9, 2005).                                                                          |
| 10.43+                    | TiVo Interactive Program Guide License Agreement, effective as of June 6, 2003, by and between TiVo Inc. and Gemstar TV Guide International, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 30, 2003).                                           |
| 10.44+                    | TV Guide Showcase Rider to TiVo Interactive Program Guide License Agreement, effective as of June 6, 2003, by and between TiVo Inc. and Gemstar TV Guide International, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 30, 2003).                |
| 10.45+                    | TV Guide Promotion Rider to TiVo Interactive Program Guide License Agreement, effective as of June 6, 2003, by and between TiVo Inc. and Gemstar TV Guide International, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 30, 2003).               |
| 10.46++                   | Service Provider Amendment to TiVo Interactive Program Guide License Agreement, effective as of August 23, 2006, by and between Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 11, 2006).  |
| 10.47++                   | Remote Scheduling Amendment to TiVo Interactive Program Guide License Agreement, effective as of August 23, 2006, by and between Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 11, 2006). |
| 10.48+                    | Tribune Media Services Television Licensed Data Agreement between Tribune Media Services, Inc. and TiVo Inc., with an effective date of March 1, 2004 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on January 23, 2004).                                    |
| 10.49+                    | Amendment to the Television Licensed Data Agreement between TiVo Inc. and Tribune Media Services, Inc., dated June 28, 2005 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.0 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2005).                                                          |
| 10.50+                    | Second Amendment to the Television Licensed Data Agreement between TiVo Inc. and Tribune Media Services, Inc., effective June 28, 2005 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.0 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 9, 2005).                                                |

**Table of Contents**

**EXHIBIT  
NUMBER**

**DESCRIPTION**

|        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10.51+ | Third Amendment to the Television Licensed Data Agreement between TiVo Inc. and Tribune Media Services, Inc., effective November 1, 2005 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 9, 2005).                  |
| 10.52+ | Addendum No. 1 to the Television Licensed Data Agreement, between Tribune Media Services, Inc., TiVo Inc., and Fandango, Inc., effective November 1, 2005 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 9, 2005). |
| 10.53* | Vice Chairman Employment Agreement between TiVo Inc. and Thomas S. Rogers, dated October 11, 2004 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 10, 2004).                                                        |
| 10.54* | Employment Agreement between Thomas S. Rogers and TiVo Inc., effective July 1, 2005 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2005).                                                                      |
| 10.55* | Change of Control Agreement between Thomas S. Rogers and TiVo Inc., effective July 1, 2005 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2005).                                                               |
| 10.56* | Employment Transition Agreement between Michael Ramsay and TiVo Inc., effective July 29, 2005 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2005).                                                            |
| 10.57* | Employment Transition and Separation Agreement between David H. Courtney and TiVo Inc., effective September 28, 2005 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 9, 2005).                                      |
| 10.58+ | Intellectual Property and Technology Agreement, effective as of August 9, 2004, between TiVo Inc., TGC, Inc., and TiVo Intl. II, Inc. (incorporated by reference to the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2004).                                    |
| 10.59+ | First Amendment to Intellectual Property and Technology Agreement, between TGC, Inc., TiVo Inc., and TiVo Intl. II, Inc., effective as of January 14, 2005 (incorporated by reference to the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on June 9, 2005).                    |
| 10.60+ | Share Transfer Agreement, effective as of August 9, 2004, between TiVo Inc., TGC, Inc., and certain other investors listed therein (incorporated by reference to the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2004).                                       |
| 10.61+ | Investor Rights Agreement, effective as of August 9, 2004, between TiVo Inc., TGC, Inc., and certain other investors listed therein (incorporated by reference to the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 9, 2004).                                      |
| 10.62+ | Licensing and Marketing Agreement, effective as of March 15, 2005, between TiVo Inc., Comcast STB Software DVR, LLC, and Comcast Corporation (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.58 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 15, 2005).                  |

## **Table of Contents**

| <b>EXHIBIT<br/>NUMBER</b> | <b>DESCRIPTION</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10.63                     | First Amendment to the Licensing and Marketing Agreement, effective as of March 27, 2006, between TiVo Inc., Comcast STB Software DVR, LLC, and Comcast Corporation (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.73 of the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 14, 2006). |
| 10.64++                   | Second Amendment to the Licensing and Marketing Agreement, effective as of October 23, 2006, between TiVo Inc., Comcast STB Software DVR, LLC, and Comcast Corporation (incorporated by reference to the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 11, 2006).         |
| 10.65*                    | Employment Letter Agreement, dated June 8, 2006, between TiVo Inc. and Steven J. Sordello (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 11, 2006).                                                                     |
| 10.66*                    | Change of Control Agreement between Steven J. Sordello and TiVo Inc., effective January 1, 2007 (filed herewith).                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 10.67++                   | License and Distribution Agreement, dated as of August 22, 2006, between CoxCom, Inc. and TiVo Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on September 11, 2006).                                                           |
| 10.68                     | Credit Agreement, dated as of January 25, 2007, between Citigroup Global Markets Realty Corp. and TiVo Inc. (filed herewith).                                                                                                                                                            |
| 14                        | TiVo Code of Conduct, as amended February 9, 2005 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on February 15, 2005).                                                                                                                 |
| 23.1                      | Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm's Consent (filed herewith).                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 24.1                      | Power of Attorney (see signature page) of this Annual Report on Form 10-K and incorporated herein by reference.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 31.1                      | Certification of Thomas Rogers, Chief Executive Officer of TiVo Inc. dated April 16, 2007 pursuant to Securities Exchange Act Rules 13a-14(a) and 15d-14(a) as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.                                                        |
| 31.2                      | Certification of Steven J. Sordello, Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of TiVo Inc. dated April 16, 2007 pursuant to Securities Exchange Act Rules 13a-14(a) and 15d-14(a) as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.                         |
| 32.1                      | Certification of Thomas Rogers, Chief Executive Officer of TiVo Inc. dated April 16, 2007 in accordance with 18 U.S.C. § 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.                                                                                     |
| 32.2                      | Certification of Steven J. Sordello, Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of TiVo Inc. dated April 16, 2007 in accordance with 18 U.S.C. § 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.                                                      |

+ Confidential treatment granted as to portions of this exhibit.

++ Confidential treatment has been requested as to portions of this exhibit.

\* Management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement.

**Table of Contents**

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, there unto duly authorized.

**TIVO INC.**

Date: April 16, 2007

/S/ THOMAS ROGERS  
**Thomas Rogers**  
*Chief Executive Officer*

113

**Table of Contents****POWER OF ATTORNEY**

**KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS**, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints Thomas Rogers and Steven Sordello and each or any one of them, his true and lawful attorney-in-fact and agent, with full power of substitution and resubstitution, for him and in his name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, to sign any and all amendments (including post-effective amendments) to this Report on Form 10-K, and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, granting unto said attorneys-in-fact and agents, and each of them, full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in connection therewith, as fully to all intents and purposes as he might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorneys-in-fact and agents, or any of them, or their or his substitutes or substitute, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant in the capacities and on the dates indicated:

| <b>Signature</b>       | <b>Title</b>                                                                                    | <b>Date</b>    |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| /s/ THOMAS ROGERS      |                                                                                                 |                |
| <b>Thomas Rogers</b>   | Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)                                           | April 16, 2007 |
| /s/ STEVE SORDELLO     |                                                                                                 |                |
| <b>Steven Sordello</b> | Senior Vice President, and Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial and Accounting Officer) | April 16, 2007 |
| /s/ CHARLES FRUIT      |                                                                                                 |                |
| <b>Charles Fruit</b>   | Director                                                                                        | April 16, 2007 |
| /s/ JEFFREY HINSON     |                                                                                                 |                |
| <b>Jeffrey Hinson</b>  | Director                                                                                        | April 16, 2007 |
| /s/ RANDY KOMISAR      |                                                                                                 |                |
| <b>Randy Komisar</b>   | Director                                                                                        | April 16, 2007 |
| /s/ MARK W. PERRY      |                                                                                                 |                |
| <b>Mark W. Perry</b>   | Director                                                                                        | April 16, 2007 |
| /s/ MICHAEL RAMSAY     |                                                                                                 |                |
| <b>Michael Ramsay</b>  | Director                                                                                        | April 16, 2007 |

---

**Table of Contents**

/s/ JOSEPH UVA

Director

April 16, 2007

**Joseph Uva**

/s/ GEOFFREY Y. YANG

Director

April 16, 2007

**Geoffrey Y. Yang**

/s/ DAVID ZASLAV

Director

April 16, 2007

**David Zaslav**